Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary students of English

Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
UNIT 1 am/is/are

positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am</th>
<th>(I'm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(he's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(she's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(it's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>(we're)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>(you're)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>(they're)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am not</th>
<th>(I'm not)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>(he's not or he isn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>(she's not or she isn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>(it's not or it isn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>(we're not or we aren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>(you're not or you aren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>(they're not or they aren't)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Can you close the window, please? I'm cold.
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is a policeman. He's very tall.
- John is afraid of dogs.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.
- Ann and I are very good friends.
- My shoes are very dirty. I must clean them.

- I'm tired but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics.
- Jane isn't at home at the moment. She's at work.
- Those people aren't English. They're Australian.

that's = that is  there's = there is  here's = here is:
- Thank you. That's very kind of you.
- Look! There's George.
UNIT 1 Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (she's/we aren't etc.).

1 he is .............. he's .................. 3 she is not .................................. 5 I am not ..................
2 they are ............... 4 it is ........................................ 6 you are not ...................

Write the full form (she is/we are not etc.).

7 we aren't .............. we are not .......... 9 you're .................................. 11 it isn't ..................
8 I'm ........................................ 10 they aren't ......................... 12 she's

1.2 Put in am, is or are.

1 The weather .............. very nice today. 8 This castle .................. one thousand years old.
2 I .................. not tired. 9 My brother and I .............. good tennis players.
3 This case .............. very heavy. 10 Ann .............. at home but her children
4 These cases .............. very heavy. 11 at school.
5 The dog .............. asleep. 12 she's
6 Look! There .............. Carol.
7 I .............. hot. Can you open the window, please?

1.3 Write full sentences. Use am/is/are each time.

1 (my shoes very dirty) My shoes are very dirty.
2 (my bed very comfortable) My
3 (your cigarettes in your bag)
4 (I not very happy today) 
5 (this restaurant very expensive)
6 (the shops not open today)
7 (Mr Kelly's daughter six years old)
8 (the houses in this street very old)
9 (the examination not difficult)
10 (those flowers very beautiful)

1.4 Write positive or negative sentences. Use am/am not/isn't/are/aren't.

1 (Paris/the capital of France) Paris is the capital of France.
2 (I/interested in football) I'm not interested in football.
3 (I/hungry) I 
4 (it/warm today) It 
5 (Rome/in Spain) Rome
6 (I/afraid of dogs) I 
7 (my hands/cold) My 
8 (Canada/a very big country)
9 (the Amazon/in Africa)
10 (diamonds/cheap)
11 (motor-racing/a dangerous sport)
12 (cats/big animals)
UNIT 2  am/is/are (questions)

Unit 1  am/is/are
positive                      question
I  am
he  is
she
it
we
you  are
they

- 'Is your mother at home?' 'No, she's out.'
- 'Is it cold in your room?' 'Yes, a little.'
- Those shoes are nice. Are they new?
- Are books expensive in your country?

- 'How old is Joe?' 'He's 24.'
- 'What colour is your car?' 'It's blue.'
- 'Where are you from?' 'Canada.'
- 'How much are these postcards?' 'They're 40 pence each.'

what's = what is  who's = who is  how's = how is  where's = where is:
- What's the time?  - Who's that man?
- Where's Jill?  - How's your father?

short answers

Yes, I am.

No, I'm not.

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I'm not but I'm thirsty.'
- 'Is he English?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is Ann at work today?' 'No, she isn't.'
- 'Is this seat free?' 'Yes, it is.'
- 'Are these your shoes?' 'Yes, they are.'
- 'Am I late?' 'No, you aren't.'
UNIT 2 Exercises

2.1 Write questions from these words. Use am/is/are.

1 (your mother at home?)  Is your mother at home? ......................................................... ?
2 (your parents at home?) ................................................................. at home? ................................................................. ?
3 (this hotel expensive?) ................................................................. ?
4 (you interested in art?) ................................................................. ?
5 (the shops open today?) ................................................................. ?
6 (the park open today?) ................................................................. ?

2.2 Write questions with What/Who/How/Where/Why ...? Use am/is/are.

1 (what colour your car?)  What colour is your car? ................................................................. ?
2 (where my key?)  Where ................................................................. ?
3 (where my socks?) ................................................................. ?
4 (how old your father?) ................................................................. ?
5 (what colour his eyes?) ................................................................. ?
6 (why John angry with me?) ................................................................. ?
7 (how much these shoes?) ................................................................. ?
8 (who your favourite actor?) ................................................................. ?
9 (why you always late?) ................................................................. ?

2.3 Ask the questions. (Read the answers to the questions first.)

Paul.
I’m married.
No, I’m not.
From Australia.
I’m 25.
No, I’m a teacher.
No, she’s a lawyer.
She’s Italian.
Anna.
She’s 25 too.

2.4 Write positive or negative short answers (Yes, I am/No, he isn’t etc.).

1 Are you married? No, I’m not.  6 Is it dark now? .................................................................
2 Are you tall? Yes, I am.  7 Are your hands cold? .................................................................
3 Is it cold today? .................................................................
4 Are you a teacher? .................................................................
5 Are you tired? .................................................................  8 Are you hungry? .................................................................

9 Is your father tall? .................................................................  10 Is it sunny? .................................................................
UNIT 3  I am doing (present continuous)

The present continuous tense is:

am / is / are -ing (doing / eating / raining / running / writing etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am (not) -ing</th>
<th>I'm working.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is (not) -ing</td>
<td>Tom is writing a letter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is (not) -ing</td>
<td>She isn't eating.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>is (not) -ing</td>
<td>The telephone is ringing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are (not) -ing</td>
<td>We're having dinner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are (not) -ing</td>
<td>You're not listening to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are (not) -ing</td>
<td>The children are doing their homework.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 1 for the short forms 'm / s /'re / isn't / aren't

- am / is / are -ing = something

is happening now:

- I'm working
- she's wearing a hat
- they're playing football
- I'm not watching television

past ← NOW → future

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
- Look! Joy is wearing her new hat. (= she's wearing it now)
- Don't go out now. It's raining.
- 'Where are the children?' 'They're playing in the garden.'
- (on the telephone) We're having dinner now. Can you phone later?
- You can turn the television off. I'm not watching it.

Spelling

- Appendix 4 (4.3 and 4.4):
- come → coming
- run → running
- smoke → smoking
- sit → sitting
- write → writing
- swim → swimming
- lie → lying
- die → dying

Unit 4  Are you -ing? (present continuous questions)
Unit 8  I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)
Unit 21 What are you doing tomorrow? (present for the future)
UNIT 3 Exercises

3.1 Complete the sentences. Use am/is/are + one of these verbs:
building coming having playing cooking standing swimming

1 Listen! Pat is playing the piano.
2 They a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.
3 Look! Somebody in the river.
4 'You on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
5 Hurry up! The bus
6 'Where are you, George?' 'In the kitchen. I a meal.'
7 (on the telephone) 'Hello. Can I speak to Ann, please?' 'She a shower at the moment. Can you phone again later?'

3.2 What's happening at the moment? Write true sentences.

1 (I/wash/my hair) I'm not washing my hair.
2 (it/snow) It is snowing.
3 (I/sit/on a chair)
4 (I/eat)
5 (it/rain)
6 (I/learn/English)
7 (I/listen/to the radio)
8 (the sun/shine)
9 (I/wear/shoes)
10 (I/smoke/a cigarette)
11 (I/read/a newspaper)

3.3 What is the difference between picture A and picture B? Write two sentences each time. Use is/are (not) -ing.

1 In A the man is smoking a cigarette. In B he is eating an apple.
2 In A the man In B he
3 In A In B
4
5
6
UNIT 4  Are you -ing? (present continuous questions)

Unit 3  I am doing (present continuous)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am -ing</td>
<td>am I -ing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he is -ing</td>
<td>he is -ing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she it</td>
<td>she it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you are -ing</td>
<td>we you are -ing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Are you feeling okay?' 'Yes, I'm feeling fine.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold today.
- 'What's Roy doing?' 'He's cooking the dinner.'
- 'What are the children doing?' 'They're playing in the garden.'
- Look! There's Jan. Where's she going?

The word order in these questions is:

is/are + subject + -ing
Is he working today?
Is Mr Smith working today?
Where are they going?
Where are those people going? (not 'Where are going those people?')

short answers

Yes, I am.
Yes, he she it
Yes, we you they

No, I'm not.
No, he she isn't.
No, we're they're aren't.
No, she's it's not. or No, she it isn't.
No, you're you aren't.

- 'Are you listening to the radio?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Is Tom working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't.'
UNIT 4  Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and ask a question. Choose one of these verbs:
crying  eating  going  laughing  looking at  reading


4.2 Write the question 'What ... doing?' with different subjects.
1 (he) What are he going?  3 (I) What?  5 (we) Where are we going?
7 (the girl with long hair) Where are you going?  8 (the man on the bicycle) Where are you going?

Now write the question 'Where ... going?' with these subjects.
5 (we) Where are we going?  6 (those children) Where are they going?
7 (the girl with long hair) Where are you going?  8 (the man on the bicycle) Where are you going?

4.3 Ask the questions. (Read the answers to the questions first.)

1 (you/watch/TV?) Are you watching TV?  5 No, you can turn it off.
2 (the children/play?) Are they playing?  6 No, they're asleep.
3 (what/you/do)? What do you do?  7 I'm cooking my dinner.
4 (what/Rod/do?) What does Rod do?  8 He's having a bath.
5 (it/rain?) Is it raining?  9 No, not at the moment.
6 (that clock/work?) Does the clock work?  10 No, it's broken.
7 (you/write/a letter?) Are you writing a letter?  11 Yes, to my sister.
8 (why/you/run?) Why are you running?  12 Because I'm late.

4.4 Write positive or negative short answers (Yes, I am/No, it isn't etc.).

1 Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.  5 Are you eating something? Yes, I am.
2 Are you wearing shoes? Yes, I am.  6 Are you feeling well? No, I'm not.
3 Are you wearing a hat? Yes, I am.  7 Is the sun shining? Yes, it is.
4 Is it raining? No, it isn't.  8 Is your mother watching you? Yes, she is.
UNIT 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

They have a lot of books. They read a lot.
He's eating an ice-cream. He likes ice-cream.

They read/I like/he likes etc. = the present simple:

I/we/you/they do read like work play watch
he/she/it does reads likes works plays watches

Remember:
he/she/it -s: he likes (not ‘he like’) my sister plays it rains
– I live in London but my brother lives in Scotland.

have → has: I have → he/she/it has

Spelling ▶ Appendix 4 (4.1 and 4.2):
-es after -s/-ch/-sh: pass → passes watch → watches finish → finishes
also: do → does go → goes
study → studies carry → carries

We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:
– I like big cities.
– The shops open at 9 o’clock and close at 5.30.
– He works very hard. He starts at 7.30 and finishes at 8 o’clock in the evening.
– The Earth goes round the Sun.
– We do a lot of different things in our free time.
– She’s very clever. She speaks four languages.
– It costs a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.

We use the present simple with always/never/often/sometimes/usually:
– He always gets up at 7 o’clock.
– I usually go to work by car but I sometimes walk.
– Jack eats very little. He never has breakfast in the morning.
– The weather here is not very good. It often rains.
UNIT 5 Exercises

5.1 Write the **he/she/it** form of these verbs.

1. read \( \text{reads} \)  
2. repair \( \text{repairs} \)  
3. watch \( \text{watches} \)  
4. listen \( \text{listens} \)  
5. love \( \text{loves} \)  
6. have \( \text{has} \)  
7. push \( \text{pushes} \)  
8. do \( \text{does} \)  
9. think \( \text{thinks} \)  
10. kiss \( \text{kisses} \)  
11. buy \( \text{buys} \)  
12. go \( \text{goes} \)  

5.2 Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of these verbs:

boil close cost cost go have like meet open smoke

speak teach wash

1. She's very clever. She \( \text{speak} \) \( \text{speaks} \) \( \text{four} \) \( \text{languages} \).
2. Steve \( \text{ten} \) \( \text{cigarettes} \) \( \text{a} \) \( \text{day} \).
3. We usually \( \text{dinner} \) \( \text{at} \) \( \text{7} \) \( \text{o'clock} \).
4. I \( \text{films} \) \( \text{often} \) \( \text{to} \) \( \text{the} \) \( \text{cinema} \).
5. Water \( \text{degrees} \) \( \text{Celsius} \).
6. In Britain the banks \( \text{at} \) \( \text{9} \) \( \text{30} \) \( \text{morning} \).
7. The City Museum \( \text{at} \) \( \text{5} \) \( \text{o'clock} \) \( \text{every} \) \( \text{evening} \).
8. Food is expensive. It \( \text{a} \) \( \text{lot} \) \( \text{money} \).
9. Shoes are expensive. They \( \text{a} \) \( \text{lot} \) \( \text{money} \).
10. Tina is a teacher. She \( \text{mathematics} \) \( \text{young} \) \( \text{children} \).
11. Your job is very interesting. You \( \text{a} \) \( \text{lot} \) \( \text{people} \).
12. Peter \( \text{twice} \) \( \text{a} \) \( \text{week} \).

5.3 Study this information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Bob and Ann</th>
<th>George</th>
<th>you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 drink coffee in the morning?</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>usually</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 read newspapers?</td>
<td>often</td>
<td>never</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 get up before 7 o'clock?</td>
<td>sometimes</td>
<td>always</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now write sentences about Bob and Ann, George and yourself. Use **always/usually/often/sometimes/never**.

1. Bob and Ann \( \text{never} \) \( \text{drink} \) \( \text{coffee} \) \( \text{in} \) \( \text{morning} \).
   George \( \text{in} \) \( \text{morning} \).
   I \( \text{in} \) \( \text{morning} \).

2. Bob and Ann \( \text{read} \) \( \text{newspapers} \).
   George \( \text{read} \) \( \text{newspapers} \).
   I \( \text{read} \) \( \text{newspapers} \).

3. Bob and Ann \( \text{get} \) \( \text{up} \) \( \text{before} \) \( \text{7} \) \( \text{o'clock} \).
   George \( \text{get} \) \( \text{up} \) \( \text{before} \) \( \text{7} \) \( \text{o'clock} \).
   I \( \text{get} \) \( \text{up} \) \( \text{before} \) \( \text{7} \) \( \text{o'clock} \).
UNIT 6  I don't ... (present simple negative)

Unit 5  I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

The present simple negative is don't/doesn't + verb:

- She doesn't smoke.
- He doesn't work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work</td>
<td>I do not (don't) work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we play</td>
<td>we do not (don't) play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you like</td>
<td>you like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>works</td>
<td>does not (doesn't) works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plays</td>
<td>plays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>does</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>likes</td>
<td>likes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I drink coffee but I don't drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea but she doesn't drink coffee.
- You don't speak English very well.
- They don't watch television very often.
- Rice doesn't grow in cold countries.
- We don't know many people in this town.

We use don't/doesn't + infinitive (like/do/speak/work etc.):
- I don't like washing the car. I don't do it very often.
- She speaks Spanish but she doesn't speak Italian. (not 'she doesn't speaks')

Remember:

- I don't like football.
- He doesn't like football.
- I don't like Fred and Fred doesn't like me. (not 'Fred don't like')
- My car doesn't use much petrol. (not 'my car don't use')
- Sometimes he is late but it doesn't happen very often.

Unit 7  Do you ...? (present simple questions)
UNIT 6 Exercises

6.1 Write the negative.
1 I play the piano very well. I don't play piano very well.
2 Jack plays the piano very well. Jack does not play piano very well.
3 You know the answer. You do not know the answer.
4 She works very hard. She does not work very hard.
5 They do the same thing every day. They do not do the same thing every day.

6.2 Write the opposite (positive or negative).
1 I understand. I don't understand.
2 He doesn't smoke. He smokes.
3 They know. They don't know.
4 She loves him. She doesn't love him.
5 They speak English. They don't speak English.
6 I don't want it. I want it.
7 She doesn't want them. She wants them.
8 He lives in Rome. He does not live in Rome.

6.3 Study the information and write sentences with like.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do you like...?</th>
<th>Bill and Rose</th>
<th>Carol</th>
<th>you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>classical music?</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boxing?</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horror films?</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dogs?</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Bill and Rose like classical music.
2 Bill and Rose like boxing.
3 Bill and Rose like dogs.
4 Bill and Rose like horror films.
5 Bill and Rose like classical music.

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don't/doesn't + one of these verbs: cost drive go know play see sell smoke wash wear

1 'Have a cigarette.' 'No, thank you. I don't smoke.'
2 They sell newspapers in that shop.
3 She has a car but she doesn't drive very often.
4 I like films but I don't go to the cinema very often.
5 He smells because he doesn't wash much to stay there.
6 He lives near our house but we sell a ring.
7 He likes football but he doesn't play much about politics.
8 She is married but she doesn't sell him very often.
UNIT 7  Do you ...? (present simple questions)

- Unit 5  I do/work/like etc. (present simple)  - Unit 6  I don't ... (present simple negative)

We use do/does in present simple questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I we you they</td>
<td>work play do like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he she it</td>
<td>works plays does likes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>I we you they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>work? play? do? like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>he she it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The word order in these questions is:

do/does + subject + infinitive

| How often Do do usually often | |
| What Does does | often |
| How much Does does | usually |
| What does | often |

What do you do? = What's your job?
- 'What do you do?' 'I work in a bank.

Remember:
- Do I/we/you/they do.
- Does he/she/it does.
- Do they like music?
- Does he like music?

Short answers

Yes, { I/we/you/they do.
he/she/it does. } No, { I we/you/they don't.
he/she/it doesn't. }

- 'Do you smoke?' 'No, I don't.'
- 'Do they speak English?' 'Yes, they do.'
- 'Does he work hard?' 'Yes, he does.'
- 'Does your sister live in London?' 'No, she doesn't.'

- Unit 8  I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)
UNIT 7 Exercises

7.1 You are asking somebody questions. Write questions with Do/Does ...

1 I work hard. And you? Do you work hard?
2 I play tennis. And you? you?
3 I play tennis. And Ann? Ann?
4 I know the answer. And you? the answer?
5 I like hot weather. And you?
6 I smoke. And your father?
7 I do exercises every morning. And you?
8 I speak English. And your friends?
9 I want to be famous. And you?

These questions begin with Where/What/How ...

10 I wash my hair twice a week. (how often /you?) How often do you wash your hair?
11 I live in London. (where /you?) Where
12 I watch TV every day. (how often /you?) How
13 I have lunch at home. (where /you?)
14 I get up at 7.30. (what time /you?)
15 I go to the cinema a lot. (how often /you?)
16 I go to work by bus. (how /you?)

7.2 Use the verbs in the list to make questions. Use the word(s) in brackets ( ).

cost do do go have like play rain smoke speak

1 (he) Does he often ... play ... volleyball?
2 (you) Excuse me, ... English?
3 (you) What ... ?
4 (your sister) What ... ?
5 (she) ... ?
6 (it) How often ... in summer?
7 (you) ... dancing?
8 (they) What time ... usually ... to bed?
9 (you) What ... usually ... for breakfast?
10 (it) How much ... to stay at this hotel?

7.3 Write positive or negative short answers (Yes, he does/No, I don't etc.).

1 Do you smoke? No, I don't.
2 Do you live in a big city?
3 Do you drink a lot of coffee?
4 Does your mother speak English?
5 Do you play a musical instrument?
6 Does it rain a lot where you live?
UNIT 8  I am doing (*present continuous*) and I do (*present simple*)

Jim is watching television.
He is *not* playing the guitar.

But Jim has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jim *plays* the guitar
but he is *not playing* the guitar now.

**Is he playing** the guitar?  **No, he isn't.** (*present continuous*)
**Does he play** the guitar?  **Yes, he does.** (*present simple*)

**Present continuous** (*I am doing*) — now, at the time of speaking:

![Diagram: I am doing]

- Please be quiet. I'm *working*.
- Tom is *having* a shower at the moment.
- Take an umbrella. It's *raining*.
- You can turn off the television. I'm *not watching* it.
- Why are you under the table? What are you *doing*?

**Present simple** (*I do*) — in general, all the time or sometimes:

![Diagram: I do]

- I *work* every day from 9 o'clock until 5.00.
- Tom *has* a shower every morning.
- It *rains* a lot in winter.
- I *don't watch* television very often.
- What *do you* usually *do* at the weekend?

**Do not** use these verbs in the present continuous (*I am -ing*):

want  like  love  hate  need  prefer  depend  know  mean
understand  believe  remember  forget

Use the present simple only (*I want/do you like? etc.*):

- I'm tired. I *want* to go home. (*not 'I'm wanting')
- 'Do you *know* that girl?'  'Yes, but I *forget* her name.'
- I *don't understand*. What do you *mean*?
8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

1 Does he take photographs? Yes, he does. Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn't.
   What is he doing? He's having a bath.

2 Does she drive a bus? Yes, she does. Is she driving a bus? Yes, she is.
   What is she doing? She's driving.

3 Does he clean windows? Yes, he does. Is he cleaning a window? Yes, he is.
   What is he doing? He's cleaning.

4 Do they teach? Yes, they do. Are they teaching? Yes, they are.
   What are they doing? They're teaching.

8.2 Put in am/is/are/do/don't/does/doesn't.

1 Excuse me, do you speak English?
2 'Have a cigarette.' 'No, thank you, I don't smoke.'
3 Why are you laughing at me?
4 'What does she do?' 'She's a dentist.'
5 I want to go out. It's raining.
6 'Where do you come from?' 'From Canada.'
7 How much does it cost to send a letter to Canada?
8 I can't talk to you at the moment. I'm working.
9 George is a good tennis player but he doesn't play very often.

8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or present simple (I do).

1 Excuse me, do you speak (you/speak) English?
2 Tom is having (have) a shower at the moment.
3 They don't watch (not/watch) television very often.
4 Listen! Somebody is singing (sing).
5 She's tired. She wants (want) to go home now.
6 How often do you read (you/read) a newspaper?
7 'Excuse me, but you are sitting (sit) in my place.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
8 I'm sorry, I don't understand (not/understand). Please speak more slowly.
9 'Where are you, Roy?' 'I'm in the sitting-room. I'm reading (read).
10 What time does she finish (she/finish) work every day?
11 You can turn off the radio. I don't listen (not/listen) to it.
12 He doesn't usually drive (not/usually/drive) to work.
   He usually walks (walk).
UNIT 9  I watched/cleaned/went etc. (past simple)

1 watch  television every evening.  
   (present simple)

1 watched  television yesterday evening.  
   (past simple)

watched is the past simple:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>he/she/it</th>
<th>watched</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The past simple is often -ed. For example:

work → worked      clean → cleaned      start → started
stay → stayed      live → lived        dance → danced

These verbs are regular verbs.

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I cleaned my teeth.
- Terry worked in a bank from 1981 to 1986.
- Yesterday it rained all morning. It stopped at lunchtime.
- We enjoyed the party last night. We danced a lot and talked to a lot of people.
  The party finished at midnight.

Spelling ▶ Appendix 4 (4.2 and 4.4):

study → studied     marry → married
stop → stopped       plan → planned

Some verbs are irregular (not regular). The past simple is not -ed. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 1-2):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>begin → began</th>
<th>break → broke</th>
<th>bring → brought</th>
<th>build → built</th>
<th>buy → bought</th>
<th>catch → caught</th>
<th>come → came</th>
<th>do → did</th>
<th>drink → drank</th>
<th>eat → ate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fall → fell</td>
<td>find → found</td>
<td>fly → flew</td>
<td>forget → forgot</td>
<td>get → got</td>
<td>give → gave</td>
<td>go → went</td>
<td>have → had</td>
<td>hear → heard</td>
<td>know → knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave → left</td>
<td>lose → lost</td>
<td>make → made</td>
<td>meet → met</td>
<td>pay → paid</td>
<td>put → put</td>
<td>read → read</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>say → said</td>
<td>see → saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell → sold</td>
<td>sit → sat</td>
<td>sleep → slept</td>
<td>speak → spoke</td>
<td>stand → stood</td>
<td>take → took</td>
<td>tell → told</td>
<td>think → thought</td>
<td>win → won</td>
<td>write → wrote</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I usually get up early but this morning I got up at 9.30.
- We did a lot of housework yesterday.
- Caroline went to the cinema three times last week.
- Mr Todd came into the room, took off his coat and sat down.

▶ Unit 10  I didn’t ... Did you ...? (past simple negative and questions)
9.1 Complete these sentences. Use one of these verbs in the past simple:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>clean</th>
<th>die</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>happen</th>
<th>live</th>
<th>open</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>rain</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>start</td>
<td>stay</td>
<td>want</td>
<td>watch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Yesterday evening I .................. television.
2. I .................. my teeth three times yesterday.
4. The concert last night .................. at 7.30 and .................. at 10 o'clock.
5. The accident .................. last Sunday afternoon.
6. When I was a child, I .................. to be a doctor.
7. Mozart .................. from 1756 to 1791.
8. We .................. our holiday last year. We .................. at a very good hotel.
9. Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it ..................
10. It was hot in the room, so I .................. the window.
11. The weather was good yesterday afternoon, so we .................. tennis.

9.2 Write the past of these verbs.

1. get .................. 2. eat ............................. 3. pay .............................
4. make .................. 5. give ............................. 6. leave .............................
7. see ............................. 8. go ............................. 9. hear ..........................
10. find ............................. 11. buy ............................. 12. know .............................
13. stand ............................. 14. take ............................. 15. do ..........................
16. put ............................. 17. tell ............................. 18. lose .............................
19. think ............................. 20. speak .............................

9.3 Write sentences about the past (yesterday/last week etc.).

1. He always goes to work by car. Yesterday he went to work by car.
2. They always get up early. This morning they got up early.
3. Bill often loses his keys. He lost his keys last Saturday.
4. I write a letter to Jane every week. Last week I wrote a letter to Jane.
5. She meets her friends every evening. She met her friends yesterday evening.
6. I usually read two newspapers every day. I read two newspapers yesterday.
7. They come to my house every Friday. Last Friday they came to my house.
8. We usually go to the cinema on Sunday. Last Sunday we went to the cinema.
9. Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning Tom had a shower.
10. They buy a new car every year. Last year they bought a new car.
11. I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I ate an orange.
12. We usually do our shopping on Monday. Last Monday we did our shopping.
14. We leave home at 8.30 every morning. This morning we left home at 8.30.

9.4 Write sentences about yourself. What did you do yesterday or what happened yesterday?

1. ........................................
2. ........................................
3. ........................................
4. ........................................
5. ........................................
UNIT 10  I didn’t … Did you …? (past simple negative and questions)

- We use did in past simple negatives and questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>I watched</td>
<td>I didn’t watch</td>
<td>watch?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>we cleaned</td>
<td>we didn’t play</td>
<td>clean?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>you played</td>
<td>you didn’t do</td>
<td>do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>they went</td>
<td>they didn’t go</td>
<td>go?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>he had</td>
<td>he didn’t have</td>
<td>have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>she began</td>
<td>she didn’t begin</td>
<td>begin?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- do/does (present) → did (past):
  - I don’t watch television very often.
  - I didn’t watch television yesterday.
  - Does she often go out?
  - Did she go out last night?

- We use did/didn’t + infinitive (watch/clean/do etc.):
  I watched but I didn’t watch (not ‘I didn’t watched’)
  he went but did he go? (not ‘did he went?’)
  - I played tennis yesterday but I didn’t win.
  - Don didn’t have breakfast this morning. (not ‘Don hadn’t breakfast’)
  - They went to the cinema but they didn’t enjoy the film.
  - We didn’t do much work yesterday.

- Note the word order in questions with did:
  did + subject + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>Did</th>
<th>Sue</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>you a birthday present?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>yesterday evening?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>the accident</td>
<td>happen?</td>
<td>for their holidays?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did</td>
<td>your parents</td>
<td>go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- short answers

Yes,  \{ I/we/you/they he/she/it \} did.

No,  \{ I/we/you/they he/she/it \} didn’t.

- ‘Did you see Joe yesterday?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’
- ‘Did it rain on Sunday?’ ‘Yes, it did.’
- ‘Did Helen come to the party?’ ‘No, she didn’t.’
- ‘Did your friends have a good holiday?’ ‘Yes, they did.’
10.1 Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

1 I saw John but I didn't see .......... Mary.
2 They worked on Monday but they ................ on Tuesday.
3 We went to the shop but we ................ to the bank.
4 She had a pen but she .................. any paper.
5 Jack did French at school but he ................ German.

10.2 You are asking somebody questions. Write questions with Did ...?

1 I watched TV last night. And you? Did you watch TV last night? ...................?
2 I enjoyed the party. And you? .................. you? ...................?
3 I had a good holiday. And you? .................. you? ...................?
4 I got up early this morning. And you? .................. you? ...................?
5 I slept well last night. And you? .................. you? ...................?

10.3 What did you do yesterday? (Your sentence can be positive or negative.)

1 (watch TV) I watched TV yesterday. (or I didn't watch TV yesterday.)
2 (get up before 7.30) I ............................................................
3 (have a shower) I ............................................................
4 (buy a magazine) I ............................................................
5 (speak English) I ............................................................
6 (do an examination) I ............................................................
7 (eat meat) I ............................................................
8 (go to bed before 10.30) I ............................................................

10.4 Write questions with Who/What/How/Why ...?

1 I met somebody. Who did you meet? ................................. ?
2 Harry arrived. What time .................. Harry .................. ?
3 I saw somebody. Who .......... you .......... ?
4 They wanted something. What ..................? ..................?
5 The meeting finished. What time ........................................ ?
6 Pat went home early. Why ........................................ ?
7 We had dinner. What .................. for dinner? .................. ?
8 It cost a lot of money. How much ........................................ ?

10.5 Put the verb in the correct form of the past (positive, negative or question).

1 I played .......... (play) tennis yesterday but I .............. didn't win .......... (not/win).
2 We ......... (wait) a long time for the bus but it .............. (not/come).
3 That's a nice shirt. Where .............. (you/buy) it?
4 She ......... (see) me but she .............. (not/speak) to me.
5 ' .............. (it/rain) yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.'
6 That was a stupid thing to do. Why .............. (you/do) it?
Now Charlie is at work.
At midnight last night he wasn't at work.
He was in bed.
He was asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past):
- I am tired (now).
- Is she at home (now)?
- The weather is nice today.
I was tired last night.
Was she at home yesterday morning?
The weather was nice yesterday.

are (present) → were (past):
- You are late (now).
- They aren't here (now).
You were late yesterday.
They weren't here last Sunday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>was not (wasn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>were not (weren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
- When I was a child, I was afraid of dogs.
- We were tired after the journey but we weren't hungry.
- The hotel was very comfortable and it wasn't expensive.
- Where were you at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?
- Was the weather good when you were on holiday?
- Those shoes are nice. Were they expensive?
- Why was he angry yesterday?

short answers

Yes,  
{ I/he/she/it was.
    we/you/they were.

No,  
{ I/he/she/it wasn't.
    we/you/they weren't.

- 'Were you late?' ‘No, I wasn't.’
- 'Was Ted at work yesterday?' 'Yes, he was.'
- 'Were they at the party?' ‘No, they weren't.'
UNIT 11  Exercises

11.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?

1. George was in bed.
2. Carol and Jack
3. Sue
4. Mr and Mrs Baker
5. Ben
6. And you? I

11.2 Put in am/is/are/was/were. Some sentences are present and some are past.

1. Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
2. Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it was cold.
3. I am hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4. I was hungry last night, so I had something to eat.
5. Where were you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6. Don't buy those shoes. They are too expensive.
7. Why are you so angry yesterday?
8. We must go now. It is very late.
9. This time last year I was in Paris.
10. We were tired when we arrived home, so we went to bed.
11. Charlie Chaplin died in 1978. He was a famous film star.
12. 'Where were the children?' ‘I don't know. They were in the garden ten minutes ago.

11.3 Put in was/wasn't/were/weren't.

1. We didn't like our hotel room. It was very small and it wasn't very clean.
2. Kate got married when she was 24 years old.
3. I phoned you yesterday evening but you were at home. Where were you?
4. George was at work last week because he was ill. He's better now.
5. The shops were open yesterday because it was a public holiday.
6. 'Were you at home at 9.30?' 'No, I wasn't at work.'

11.4 Write questions.

1. I saw a film. (good?) Was it good?
2. I met some people. (friendly?) Were they friendly?
3. I did an examination. (difficult?) Was it difficult?
4. I bought some boots. (expensive?) Were they expensive?
5. I went to a museum. (interesting?) Was it interesting?
UNIT 12  I was doing (past continuous)

Now it is 6 o'clock. 
Sarah is at home. 
She is watching television.

At 4 o'clock she wasn't at home. 
She was at the sports club. 
She was playing tennis. 
She wasn't watching television.

was/were -ing (doing / playing / working etc.) is the past continuous tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was -ing</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>were -ing</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was not (wasn't)</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>I he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>were not (weren't)</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>we you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td>you they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday?' 'I was working.'
- 'What did he say?' 'I don't know. I wasn't listening.'
- It was raining, so we didn't go out.
- In 1980 they were living in Canada.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

am/is/are -ing (present) —> was/were -ing (past):
- I'm working (now).
- It isn't raining (now).
- What are you doing (now)?
- I was working at 10.30 last night.
- It wasn't raining when we went out.
- What were you doing at 3 o'clock?

Spelling (make — making run — running lie — lying etc.)  ► Appendix 4 (4.3 and 4.4)
12.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

1. Ann was at home. She was watching TV.
2. Carol and Jack ........................................ They ........................................
3. Tom ..........................................................
4. ..........................................................
5. ..........................................................
6. And you? I .............................................. I ..............................................

12.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and then write a sentence for each picture.

1. At 9.44 she was washing her car.
2. At 11.45 she ...........................................
3. At 9 o'clock ...........................................
4. At 12.50 ..............................................
5. At 8.15 ..............................................
6. At 10.30 ..............................................

12.3 Write questions. Use was/were -ing.
1. (what/Tim/do/when you saw him?) What was Tim doing when you saw him?
2. (what/you/do/at 11 o'clock?) What ..............................................
3. (what/she/wear/yesterday?) ..............................................
4. (it/rain/when you went out?) ..............................................
5. (where/you/live/in 1981?) ..............................................

12.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.

1. (he/wear/a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
2. (he/smoke/a pipe) ..............................................
3. (he/carry/a bag) ..............................................
4. (he/carry/an umbrella) ..............................................
5. (he/go/to the dentist) ..............................................
6. (he/wear/a hat) ..............................................
UNIT 13  I was doing *(past continuous)* and I did *(past simple)*

What happened? The phone **rang** *(past simple)*
What *was* Jack *doing* when the phone rang?
He *was reading* a book. *(past continuous)*
What *did he do* when the phone rang?
He *stopped* reading and *answered* the phone. *(past simple)*

Jack began reading before the phone rang. So:
*When* the phone rang, he *was reading.*

---

**Past simple**

- We **played** tennis yesterday.
  (from 3 o'clock until 4.00)

**Past continuous**

- He **was reading** the newspaper when the phone **rang**.
- Jack **read** the newspaper yesterday.
- Were you **watching** television when I **phoned** you?
- Did you **watch** the film on television last night?
- I **started** work at 9.00 and **finished** at 4.30. At 2.30 I **was working**.
- When we **went** out, it **was raining**. (= it started raining before we went out)
- I **saw** Lucy and Tom this morning. They **were standing** at the bus-stop.
- Joy **fell asleep** while she **was reading**. *(while)*
UNIT 13  Exercises

13.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences. Use the past continuous or past simple.
Example (see the pictures opposite):

(Jack/read/a book)    Jack was reading a book.

(the phone/ring)     The phone rang.

(he/answer/the phone) He answered the phone.

1 (Tom/walk/down the street)
   Tom ..................................................

(he/see/Jack)
   (he/say/hello)

2 (they/sit/in the garden)
   (it/start/to rain)

(they/go/into the house)

3 (Carol/paint/the room)
   (she/fall/off the ladder)

(she/break/her arm)

13.2 Put the verb into the past continuous (I was doing) or past simple (I did).

1 When we went (go) out, it was raining (rain).
2 I wasn't hungry last night. I didn't eat (not/eat) anything.
3 Were you watching (you/watch) television when I phoned (phone) you?
4 Jane wasn't at home when I went to see her. She was (work).
5 I got (get) up early this morning. I washed (wash), dressed (dress) and then I had (have) breakfast.
6 The postman came (come) while I had (have) breakfast.
7 We met (meet) Joan at the party. She wore (wear) a red dress.
8 The boys broke (break) a window when they played (play) football.
9 I was late but my friends waited (wait) for me when I arrived (arrive).
10 I got (get) up at 7 o'clock. The sun shone (shine), so I went (go) for a walk.
11 He didn't drive (not/drive) fast when the accident happened (happen).
12 Margaret didn't go (not/go) to work yesterday. She was ill.
13 'What did (you/do) on Saturday evening?' 'I went to the cinema.'
14 'What did (you/do) at 9.30 on Saturday evening?'
   'I watched (watch) a film in the cinema.'
UNIT 14  have/has (got)

You can say have or have got, has or has got:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>have got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>he</th>
<th>has</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>has got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I've got blue eyes. (or I have blue eyes.)
- Tim has got two sisters. (or Tim has two sisters.)
- They like animals. They've got a horse, three dogs and six cats.
- This car has got four doors.
- I don't feel very well. I've got a headache.

negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>have not</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>(haven't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No,</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>haven't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes,</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>has</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No,</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>hasn't.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I've got a motor-bike but I haven't got a car.
- Mr and Mrs Harrison haven't got any children.
- It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden.
- 'Have you got a camera?' 'Yes, I have.'
- 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'
- 'Has Ann got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'
- What kind of car has she got?

In negatives and questions you can also use do/does + have:

- They don't have any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
- It's a nice house but it doesn't have a garden. (= it hasn't got a garden)
- Does Ann have a car? (= Has Ann got a car?)
- How much money do you have? (= How much money have you got?)

The past is had. In negatives and questions we use did + have (Units 9–10):

- I had some money. I didn't have any money. Did you have any money?
14.1 Write the short form (we’ve got/he hasn’t got etc.).

1 we have got  we’ve got  3 they have got  5 it has got
2 he has got  4 she has not got  6 I have not got

14.2 Write questions.

1 (you / a camera?) Have you got a camera?
2 (you / a passport?) ...........................................
3 (your father / a car?) ...........................................
4 (Carol / many friends?) ...........................................
5 (Mr and Mrs Lewis / any children?) ............................
6 (how much money / you?) ....................................
7 (what kind of car / John?) ....................................

14.3 What have Ann and Jim got?
What have you got? Look at the information and write sentences about Ann, Jim and yourself.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Ann (she)</th>
<th>Jim (he)</th>
<th>you?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a camera</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bicycle</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>black hair</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brothers / sisters</td>
<td>two brothers</td>
<td>one sister</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 (Jim / a camera) Jim has got a camera. 8 (Ann / two brothers)
2 (I / black hair) I’ve got black hair.
   (or I haven’t got black hair.) ...........................................
3 (Ann / a camera) Ann ...........................................
4 (I / a camera) I ...........................................
5 (I / a bicycle) ...........................................
6 (Jim / a bicycle) ...........................................
7 (Ann / black hair) ...........................................
8 (Ann / two brothers)
9 (Jim / black hair)

10 (Ann / a bicycle)
11 (Jim / a sister)
12 (I / brothers / sisters)

14.4 Put in have got (‘ve got), has got (‘s got), haven’t got or hasn’t got.

1 They like animals. They’ve got three dogs and two cats.
2 Sarah hasn’t got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
3 Everybody likes Tom. He a lot of friends.
4 Mr and Mrs Johnson two children, a boy and a girl.
5 An insect six legs.
6 I can’t open the door. I a key.
7 Quick! Hurry! We much time.
8 ‘What’s wrong?’ ‘I something in my eye.’
9 Ben doesn’t read much. He many books.
10 It’s a nice town. It a very nice shopping centre.
11 Alice is going to the dentist. She toothache.
12 ‘Where’s my newspaper?’ ‘I don’t know. I it.’
13 Julia wants to go on holiday but she any money.
14 I’m not going to work today. I a bad cold.
UNIT 15  I have done (present perfect 1)

His shoes are dirty.  He is cleaning his shoes.  He has cleaned his shoes.  (= his shoes are clean now)

They are at home.  They are going out.  They have gone out.  (= they are not at home now)

■ has cleaned / have gone etc. is the present perfect (have / has + past participle*):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>have ('ve)</th>
<th>cleaned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>have not (haven't)</td>
<td>finished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>cleaned?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>finished?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>done?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td>been?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td>bought?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td>taken?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td>begun?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

■ We use the present perfect for an action in the past with a result now:
  - I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)
  - She’s (= she has) gone to bed. (= she is in bed now)
  - We’ve bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
  - It's Kay's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present.
  - 'Hob is on holiday.' 'Oh, where has he gone?'
  - 'Are they still having dinner?' 'No, they've finished.'

**The past participle of regular verbs is -ed:**

- clean → have cleaned  
- finish → have finished  
- stop → have stopped

The past participle of irregular verbs is sometimes the same as the past simple and sometimes different. For example:

*the same:* lose → have lost  
make → have made  
have → have had

*different:* do → have done  
see → have seen  
write → have written

For a list of irregular past participles see Appendix 1–2.

► Unit 16  Have you ever ...? (present perfect 2)  ► Unit 17  How long have you ...? (present perfect 3)
► Unit 19  I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)  ► Unit 89  present perfect + yet
15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened?

1. before: shoes, now: man cleaning shoes. He has cleaned his shoes.
2. before: closed door, now: open door. She has closed the door.
3. before: bed, now: people sleeping. They have gone to bed.
4. before: rainy clouds, now: raining. It has stopped raining.
5. before: tub, now: man washing. He has had a bath.
6. before: picture, now: broken. The picture has fallen down.

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the list. Use the present perfect (have/has + the past participle of the verb).

break buy finish do go go lose paint read take

1. 'Are they still having dinner?' 'No, they have finished.'
2. I have bought some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
3. 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he has gone to work.'
4. 'Did you lose the shopping?' 'No, I'm going to do it later.'
5. 'Where's your key?' 'I don't know. I have lost it.'
6. Look! Somebody has broken that window.
7. Your house looks different. Have you lost it?
8. I can't find my umbrella. Somebody has taken it.
9. I'm looking for Sarah. Where has she gone to?
10. 'Do you want the newspaper?' 'No, thanks. I have read it.'
UNIT 16 Have you ever ...? (present perfect 2)

Unit 15 I have done (present perfect)

Have you been to Rome?
Yes, I have. Many times.
Have you ever been to Japan?
No, I've never been to Japan.

We use the present perfect (have been / have played / have done etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, your life:

HAVE YOU BEEN TO JAPAN?

past
now

- 'Have you been to France?' (in your life) 'No, I haven't.'
- I've been to Canada but I haven't been to the United States.
- She is an interesting person. She has done many different jobs and has visited many countries.
- I've seen that woman before but I can't remember when.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- 'Have you read this book?' 'Yes, I've read it twice.' (= two times)

You can use the present perfect + ever (in questions) and never:
- 'Has Ann ever been to Australia?' 'No, never.'
- 'Have you ever played golf?' 'Yes, once.' (= one time)
- My mother has never travelled by air.
- I've never ridden a horse.

gone and been

He's gone to Spain.
(= he is in Spain now)

He's been to Spain.
(= he went to Spain but now he is back)

Compare:
- I can't find Susan. Where has she gone? (= Where is she now?)
- Oh, hello, Susan. I was looking for you. Where have you been?

Unit 19 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)
UNIT 16  Exercises

16.1 You are asking Ann questions beginning Have you ever ...? Write the questions:

1 (Paris?) Have you ever been to Paris?
2 (play/golf?) Have you ever played golf?
3 (Australia?) Have you ever been to Australia?
4 (lose/your passport?) Have you ever lost your passport?
5 (sleep/in a park?) Have you ever slept in a park?
6 (eat / Chinese food?) Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
7 (New York?) Have you ever been to New York?
8 (win/a lot of money?) Have you ever won a lot of money?
9 (break/your leg?) Have you ever broken your leg?

Yes, many times.
No, never.
Yes, once.
No, never.
Yes, a few times.
Yes, twice.
No, never.
Yes, once.

16.2 Look at Ann's answers in Exercise 1. Write sentences about Ann and yourself.

Ann
1 Ann has never been to Paris.
2 Ann has played golf many times.
3 She has never been to Paris.
4 She has never been to Paris.
5 She has never been to Paris.
6 She has never been to Paris.
7 She has never been to Paris.
8 She has never been to Paris.
9 She has never been to Paris.

You
I have been to Paris twice.
I have been to Paris twice.
I have been to Paris twice.
I have been to Paris twice.
I have been to Paris twice.
I have been to Paris twice.
I have been to Paris twice.
I have been to Paris twice.

16.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. Write sentences about the things she has done. Use the present perfect.

1 (she/do/many different jobs) She has done many different jobs.
2 (she/travel/to many places) She has travelled to many places.
3 (she/do/a lot of interesting things) She has done a lot of interesting things.
4 (she/write/ten books) She has written ten books.
5 (she/meet/a lot of interesting people) She has met a lot of interesting people.
6 (she/be/married five times) She has been married five times.

16.4 Put in gone or been.

1 He's on holiday at the moment. He's gone to Spain.
2 'Where's Jill?' 'She's not here. I think she's gone to the bank.'
3 'Hello, Pat. Where have you been?' 'I've been to the bank.'
4 'Have you ever been to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
5 My parents aren't at home this evening. They've gone out.
6 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you been to it?
7 Paris is a wonderful city. I've been there many times.
8 Helen was here earlier but I think she's gone now.
UNIT 17  How long have you ...? (present perfect 3)

Jill is on holiday in London.
She arrived in London on Monday.
Today is Friday.

How long **has she been** in London?
She **has been** in London { since Monday.
for four days.

She **is** in London now. (**is** = **present**)

**but** She **has been** in London { since Monday.
for four days. (**has been** = **present perfect**)

past

She **has been** in London { since Monday.
for four days.

Monday

Present simple

**present perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Simple</th>
<th>Present Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Harry is in Canada.</td>
<td>He <strong>has been</strong> in Canada since April.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not 'He is in Canada since April.')</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you married?</td>
<td><strong>How long have</strong> you been married?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not 'How long are you married?')</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you know Sarah?</td>
<td><strong>How long have</strong> you known her?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not 'How long do you know her?')</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linda lives in London.</td>
<td><strong>How long has</strong> she lived in London?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She <strong>has lived</strong> there all her life.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We have a car.</td>
<td><strong>How long have</strong> you <strong>had</strong> your car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We've <strong>had</strong> it for a year.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Present continuous

Present perfect continuous (**have been -ing**)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
<th>Present Perfect Continuous (<strong>have been -ing</strong>)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm learning German.</td>
<td><strong>How long have</strong> you been learning German?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've been learning German for six weeks.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's raining.</td>
<td>It's <strong>been</strong> (= it has been) raining since I got up this morning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 17  Exercises

17.1 Complete these sentences.

1 Jill is in London. She ................................ in London since Monday.
2 I know George. I ................................ him for a long time.
3 They are married. They ................................ married since 1983.
4 Brian is ill. He ................................ ill for a week.
5 We live in this house. We ................................ here for ten years.
6 I know Tom very well. I ................................ him for a long time.
7 We are waiting for you. We ................................ waiting since 12 o'clock.
8 Alice works in a bank. She ................................ in a bank for five years.
9 I'm learning English. I ................................ learning English for six months.
10 She has a headache. She ................................ a headache since she got up.

17.2 Make questions with How long ...?

1 Jill is in London. ........................................ How long has she been in London?
2 I know George. ........................................ How long have you known him?
3 Mike and Judy are in Brazil. ................... How long have they been there?
4 Diana is learning Italian. ......................... How long has she been learning it?
5 My brother lives in Germany. ................... How long has he lived there?
6 It is raining. ......................................... How long has it been raining?
7 Bill is a teacher. ..................................... How long has he been teaching?
8 I know Margaret. .................................... How long have you known her?
9 I have a motor-bike. ................................. Have you had it for long?
10 Linda and Frank are married. ................. How long have they been married?
11 Alan works in London. ......................... How long has he been working there?

17.3 Write a sentence for each picture. Use the words below the pictures.

![Images of people and situations]

for ten years  since Sunday  for two hours  all day  all her life  for five years

1 They have been married for ten years.
2 He ............................................................... since Sunday.
3 They .......................................................... television
4 It ................................................................. all day.
5 She .............................................................
6 He ............................................................
UNIT 18  for since ago

► Unit 17  How long have you ...? (present perfect 3)

■ for and since:
We use for and since to say how long:

- Jill has been in London { for four days. since Monday.

We use for + a period of time (four days/two years etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for four days</th>
<th>for</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past</td>
<td>1 2 3 4 now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>four days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>an hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>five years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ten minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>two hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>three weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>six months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a long time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use since + the start of the period (Monday/9 o'clock etc.):

| start of the | since |
| period       | Monday |
|              | 9 o'clock |
|              | 24 July |
|              | December |
|              | 1985 |
| past         | Wednesday |
|              | 12.30 |
|              | 10 October |
|              | Christmas |
|              | I got up |

Compare:

- Barry has been in Canada since January. (= from January to now)
  Barry has been in Canada for six months. (not 'since six months')
- I've known her since 1980. (= from 1980 to now)
  I've known her for a long time. (not 'since a long time')

► Unit 92  from ... to until since for

■ ago = before now:
- Susan started her new job two weeks ago. (= two weeks before now)
- 'When did Tom go out?' 'Ten minutes ago.' (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner an hour ago. (= an hour before now)
- Life was very different a hundred years ago.
We use ago with the past simple (did/had.started etc.).

Compare ago and for:
- When did she arrive in London?
  She arrived in London four days ago.

- How long has she been in London?
  She has been in London for four days.
18.1 Write for or since.
1 She’s been in London since Monday.
2 She’s been in London for four days.
3 Mike has been ill a long time. He’s been in hospital October.
4 My aunt has lived in Australia 15 years.
5 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty many years.
6 Mrs Harris is in her office. She’s been there 7 o’clock.
7 India has been an independent country 1947.
8 The bus is late. We’ve been waiting 20 minutes.

18.2 When was ...? Use ago in your answers.
1 your last meal? the last time you drank coffee?
2 last December? the last time you were ill?
3 1984? the last time you went to the cinema?
4 the last time you were ill? the last time you read a newspaper?
5 the last time you went to the cinema?

18.3 Answer the questions. Use the words in brackets ( ) + for or ago.
1 (four days) When did she arrive in London? four days ago.
2 (four days) How long has she been in London? four days.
3 (20 years) How long have they been married?
4 (20 years) When did they get married?
5 (ten minutes) When did Dan arrive?
6 (two months) When did you buy those shoes?
7 (two months) How long has she been learning English?
8 (a long time) How long have you known Jan?
9 (an hour) What time did you have lunch?

18.4 Complete the sentences with for ... or since ...
1 She is in London now. She arrived there four days ago. She has been there for four days.
2 Jack is here. He arrived here on Thursday. He has
3 It is raining. It started an hour ago. It’s been
4 I know Sue. I first met Sue two years ago. I’ve
5 I have a camera. I bought it in 1985. I’ve
6 They are married. They got married six months ago. They’ve
7 Liz is studying medicine at university. She started three years ago.
   She has

18.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin with the words in brackets ( ).
1 (I’ve lived)
2 (I’ve been)
3 (I’ve been learning)
4 (I’ve had)
5 (I’ve known)
UNIT 19  I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)

We use the past simple (did/arrived/saw/was etc.) with a finished time (yesterday/last week/in 1986/six months ago etc.):

\[ \text{past + finished time} \]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>We arrived</th>
<th>yesterday</th>
<th>last week</th>
<th>at 3 o'clock</th>
<th>in 1986</th>
<th>six months ago</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

We do not use the present perfect (have done/have arrived/have been etc.) with a finished time:

- I saw Jack yesterday. (not 'I have seen Jack yesterday.')
- Where were you last night? (not 'Where have you been last night?')
- We didn't have a holiday last year. (not 'We haven't had')
- I got up at 7.15. I washed, dressed and then I had breakfast.
- William Shakespeare (1564–1616) was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems. (not '... has been a writer ... has written many plays')

Use the past simple to ask When? or What time?:
- When did they arrive? (not 'When have they arrived?')

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present perfect</th>
<th>past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have lost my key. (= I can't find it now)</td>
<td>I lost my key yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill has gone home. (= he isn't here now)</td>
<td>but Bill went home ten minutes ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you seen Ann? (= where is she now?)</td>
<td>but When did you see Ann?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>time until now (present perfect)</th>
<th>finished time (past simple)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Have you ever been to Spain? (= in your life, until now)</td>
<td>but Did you go to Spain last year?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My friend is a writer. He has written many books.</td>
<td>but Shakespeare wrote many plays and poems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We've lived in Singapore for six years. (we live there now)</td>
<td>but We lived in Glasgow for six years but now we live in Singapore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 19  Exercises

19.1 Use the words in brackets ( ) to answer the questions.

1. Have you lost your key? (yesterday) Yes, I lost it yesterday.
2. Have you seen Alan? (ten minutes ago) Yes, I saw him ten minutes ago.
3. Have you painted the gate? (last week) Yes, we painted it last week.
4. Has Sarah gone to France? (on Friday) Yes, she went to France on Friday.
5. Have they had dinner? (at 7 o'clock) No, they haven't had dinner yet.
6. Has he started his new job? (yesterday) Yes, he started his new job yesterday.

19.2 Write questions with When ...? and What time ...?

1. They have arrived. What time did they arrive?
2. Bill has gone out. What time did he go out?
3. I've seen Carol. When did you see her?
4. She's left her job. When did she leave her job?

19.3 In these sentences the verbs are underlined. Are they right or wrong? Correct the verbs that are wrong.

1. Tom arrived last week.   ___________ RIGHT
2. Have you seen Pam last week?   ___________ WRONG Did you see her?
3. I have finished my work.   ___________ RIGHT
4. I have finished my work at 2 o'clock.   ___________ RIGHT
5. When have you finished your work?   ___________ WRONG When did you finish your work?
6. George has left school three years ago.   ___________ RIGHT
7. 'Where's Ann?' 'She's gone to the cinema.'   ___________ RIGHT
8. Napoleon Bonaparte has died in 1821.   ___________ RIGHT
9. Have you ever been to Britain?   ___________ RIGHT
10. I haven't seen you at the party on Saturday.   ___________ RIGHT
11. The weather has been very bad last week.   ___________ RIGHT

19.4 Put the verb in the present perfect (I have done) or the past simple (I did).

1. My friend is a writer. She has written many books.
2. We didn't have (not/have) a holiday last year.
3. Did you see (you/see) Alan last week?
4. I played (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
5. What time did you go to bed last night?
6. (you/ever/be) to the United States?
7. My hair is clean. I washed (wash) it.
8. I washed (wash) my hair before breakfast this morning.
9. When I was a child, I didn't like (not/like) sport.
10. Kathy loves travelling. She has visited (visit) many countries.
11. John works in a bookshop. He worked (work) there for three years.
12. Last year we went (go) to Finland for a holiday. We stayed (stay) there for three weeks.
UNIT 20  it is done/it was done (passive)

The room is cleaned every day.
The room was cleaned yesterday.

Compare:  Somebody **cleans** the room every day.  (active)

The room **is cleaned** every day.  (passive)

Somebody **cleaned** the room yesterday.  (active)

The room **was cleaned** yesterday.  (passive)

The passive is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am/is/are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleaned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>damaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was/were</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The past participle of regular verbs is -ed (cleaned/damaged etc.). For a list of irregular past participles (made/seen etc.), see Appendix 1-2.

- Butter **is made** from milk.
- Oranges **are imported** into Britain.
- How often **are these rooms cleaned?**
- I **am never invited** to parties.

- This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- When **was the telephone invented?**
- I **wasn’t invited** to the party last week.
- Six people **were injured** in the accident yesterday.

We say **was/were born**:
- I **was born** in London in 1958. (not ‘I am born’)
- Where **were you born?**

passive + by ....:
- We were woken up by the noise. (= The noise woke us up.)
- The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1876.
- My brother was bitten by a dog last week.
UNIT 20  Exercises

20.1 Write sentences from the words in brackets ( ). All the sentences are present.
1 (this room/clean/every day)  This room is cleaned every day. ...................................................
2 (how often/the room/clean?)  How often is the room cleaned ...................................................
3 (glass/make/from sand)  Glass .................................................................
4 (stamps/sell/in a post office) .................................................................
5 (football/play/in most countries) ....................................................
6 (this machine/not/use/very often) ....................................................
7 (what language/speak/in Ethiopia?)  What ....................................................
8 (what/this machine/use/for?) .................................................................

20.2 Write sentences from the words in brackets ( ). All the sentences are past.
1 (the room/clean/yesterday)  The room was cleaned yesterday. ....................................................
2 (when/the room/clean?)  When was the room cleaned ....................................................
3 (this room/paint/last month)  This room .................................................................
4 (these houses/build/about 50 years ago) .................................................................
5 (Ann's bicycle/steal/last week) .................................................................
6 (three people/injure/in the accident) .................................................................
7 (when/this church/build?)  When .................................................................
8 (when/television/invent?) .................................................................
9 (how/the window/break?) .................................................................
10 (anybody/injure/in the accident?) .................................................................
11 (why/the letter/send/to the wrong address?) .................................................................

20.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

\[\text{blow, build, clean, damage, find, invent, make, make, pay, show, speak, steal}\]

1 The room is cleaned every day.
2 Two trees were blown down in the storm last night.
3 Paper is made from wood.
4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two rooms were damaged.
5 Many different languages are spoken in India.
6 These houses are very old. They were built about 500 years ago.
7 Many American programmes are shown on British television.
8 'Is this a very old film?' 'Yes, it was made in 1949.'
9 My car was stolen last week. The next day it was found by the police.
10 The transistor was invented in 1948.
11 She has a very good job. She is paid £3000 a month.

20.4 Where were they born?
1 (Ian/Edinburgh)  Ian was born in Edinburgh.
2 (Sally/Birmingham)  Sally was born in Birmingham.
3 (her parents/Ireland)  Her parents were born in Ireland.
4 (you/???)  I was born in ???.
5 (your mother/???)  My mother was born in ???.
UNIT 21 What are you doing tomorrow? (present for the future)

They are playing tennis now. She is playing tennis tomorrow.

We use am/is/are -ing (present continuous) for something happening now (( Units 3-4):
- 'Where are George and Sue?' 'They're playing tennis in the park.'
- Please be quiet. I'm working.

We also use am/is/are -ing for the future (tomorrow/next week etc.):
- Carol is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I'm not working next week.

I am doing something tomorrow = I have arranged to do something, I have a plan to do something:
- Alice is going to the dentist on Friday.
  (= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- They are going to a concert tomorrow evening.
  (they have tickets for the concert)
- Are you meeting Bill this evening?
  (= have you and Bill arranged to meet?)
- What are you doing at the weekend?
- I'm not going out tonight. I'm staying at home.
You can also say 'I'm going to do something' (( Unit 22).

Do not use the present simple (I go/do you go? etc.) for arrangements:
- I'm going out this evening. (not 'I go')
- Are you going out tonight? (not 'do you go')
- Ann isn't coming to the party next week. (not 'Ann doesn't come')

But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains etc.:
- The concert starts at 7.30.
- What time does the train leave?

Study the difference:
- I'm going to a concert this evening.
  The concert starts at 7.30.
I'm going — present continuous: usually for people
The concert starts — present simple: for programmes, trains etc.
UNIT 21  Exercises

21.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?

Carol  Dick  Tom and Sue  Barbara  George
play/tennis  go/to the cinema  go/to a party  meet/Dave  go/on holiday

1. Carol is playing tennis on Friday.
2. Dick ................................................................. 4 .................................................................
3 ........................................................................... 5 .................................................................

21.2 Write some sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1. I'm staying at home tonight. ................................................................. 4 .................................................................
2. I'm going to the theatre on Monday. ................................................................. 5 .................................................................
3 ........................................................................... 6 .................................................................

21.3 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1 (you/go/out tonight?) Are you going out tonight? ................................................................. ?
2 (you/work/next week?) .................................................................................. next week?  
3 (what/you/do/tomorrow evening?) What ................................................................. ?
4 (what time/Bob and Sue/come?) ........................................................................ ?
5 (when/Liz/go/on holiday?) ........................................................................ ?

21.4 Use the words in brackets ( ) to write sentences. All the sentences are future. Use the present continuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (it leaves etc.).

1 (I/not/go out/tonight) I'm not going out tonight. ................................................................. 
2 (the concert/start/at 8.15) The concert starts at 8.15. ................................................................. 
3 (I/meet/my friends this evening) I ................................................................. 
4 (Tom/not/come/to the party on Thursday) Tom ................................................................. 
5 (The English course/finish/on 10 May) The ................................................................. 
6 (my sister/get/married next December) My ................................................................. 
7 (my train/leave/at 8.45) ................................................................. 
8 (I/not/go/to London tomorrow) ................................................................. 

These sentences are questions. All the sentences are future.

9 (what time/the train/leave?) What time ................................................................. ?
10 (what time/you/leave/tomorrow?) ................................................................. ?
11 (when/they/get married?) ........................................................................ ?
12 (when/the next English course/begin?) ................................................................. ?
UNIT 22  I'm going to ...

morning ...

I'm going to watch TV this evening.

this evening...

She is going to watch TV this evening.

- We use am/is/are going to ... for the future:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>am</th>
<th>is (not)</th>
<th>going to</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>drink</th>
<th>watch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>going to</td>
<td>buy ...?</td>
<td>eat ...?</td>
<td>wear ...?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we/you/they</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>we/you/they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I am going to do something = I have decided to do something, my intention is to do something:

I decided to do it → I'm going to do it →

past          present          future

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the party on Saturday?
- 'Your hair is dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to wash it.'
- Are you going to invite John to your party?

- You can say that something is going to happen when it is clear now that it is sure to happen:

  - Look at the sky! It's going to rain.
    (black clouds now → rain)
  - Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.
    I'm going to be late.
    (9 o'clock now and not ready → late)

- We also use the present continuous (I am -ing) for the future, usually for arrangements (► Unit 21):

  - I am playing tennis with Jack tomorrow.
22.1 What are these people going to do?
1 She's going to watch TV.
2 He
3 They
4
5
6

22.2 Are you going to do these things tomorrow?
1 (buy a car) I'm not going to buy a car. (or I'm going to buy a car.)
2 (get up before 6.30) I
3 (have breakfast) I
4 (watch TV in the morning) I
5 (cook a meal)
6 (ride a bicycle)

22.3 Make questions. Use ... going to ...
1 (what / you / wear / to the party?) What are you going to wear to the party?
2 (when / you / visit me again?)
3 (what time / Tom / phone you tonight?)
4 (how long / your friends / stay here?)
5 (what, time / you / get up tomorrow?)

22.4 Complete the sentences. Use ... going to + one of these verbs:
eat give lie rain study walk wash
1 My hair is dirty. I'm going to wash it.
2 I don't want to go home by bus. I
3 John's university course begins in October. He engineering.
4 Take an umbrella with you. It
5 I'm hungry. I this sandwich.
6 It's Val's birthday next week. We her a present.
7 I feel tired. I down for an hour.
Bill is 24 years old now.
Last year he was 23.
Next year he will be 25.

**will + infinitive (will be/will win/will come etc.):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive and negative</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they he/she/it</td>
<td>will ('ll) will not (won't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>will</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

will = 'll: I'll (= I will)/you'll/she'll etc.
will not = won't: I won't (= I will not)/you won't/it won't etc.

- We use will for the future (tomorrow/next week etc.):
  - She travels a lot. Today she is in London. Tomorrow she'll be in Rome. Next week she'll be in Tokyo.
  - Telephone me this evening. I'll be at home.
  - Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
  - We'll probably go out this evening.
  - **Will you be** at home this evening?

  - I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
  - Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.

We often say **I think ... will ...:**

- I think Diana will pass the exam.
- I don't think it will rain this afternoon.
- **Do you think** the examination will be difficult?

But do **not** use will for things you have already arranged to do or decided to do (Units 21-2):

- We're going to the theatre on Saturday. (not 'we will go')
- **Are you working** tomorrow? (not 'will you work')

**shall**

You can say **I shall** (= I will) and **we shall** (= we will):

- I shall be late tomorrow. or I will (I'll) be late tomorrow.
- I think we shall win. or I think we will (we'll) win.

But **don't** use shall with you/they/he/she/it. (not 'he shall be late')
UNIT 23 Exercises

23.1 Helen is going on a European tour next month. Look at her plans. Where will she be on these dates?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6-9</td>
<td>Paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9-11</td>
<td>Munich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11-15</td>
<td>Vienna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-22</td>
<td>Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23-28</td>
<td>Athens</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 (8th) She'll be in Paris. ........................................
2 (10th) She .........................................................
3 (25th) ..............................................................
4 (14th) ..............................................................
5 (20th) ..............................................................

23.2 Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use I'll be .../I'll probably be .../I don't know where I'll be.

1 (tomorrow at 10 o'clock) I'll probably be on the beach.
   (or I'll be at work. or I don't know where I'll be.)
2 (one hour from now) I ..................................................
3 (at midnight) .......................................................
4 (at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon) ................................
5 (two years from now) ...............................................}

23.3 Write the negative.

1 You'll sleep. You won't sleep.....................................
2 I'll forget. I .........................................................
3 It will happen. ......................................................
4 You'll find it. .......................................................}

23.4 Write sentences with I think ... All the sentences are future.

1 (Diana/pass the exam) I think Diana will pass the exam.
2 (Jack/win the game) I think ........................................
3 (Sue/like her present) ...............................................}
4 (the weather/be nice tomorrow) ................................

Now write two sentences with I don't think ...

5 (they/get married) I don't ...........................................
6 (I be at home this evening) .........................................}

23.5 The verbs in these sentences are underlined. Which are right? Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.

1 We go/We are going to the theatre tonight. We've got the tickets.
   (We are going is right.)
2 'What will you do/are you doing tomorrow evening?' 'Nothing. I'm free.'
3 I'll go/I'm going away tomorrow morning. My train is at 8.40.
4 I'm sure he'll lend/he's lending you some money. He's very rich.
5 'Why are you putting on your coat?' 'I'll go out/I'm going out.'
6 Do you think Claire will phone/is phoning us tonight?
7 She can't meet us on Saturday. She'll work/She's working.
UNIT 24  will/shall (2)

You can use I'll ... (= I will) when you offer or decide to do something:
- 'My case is very heavy.' 'I'll carry it for you.'
- 'I'll phone you tomorrow, okay?' 'Okay, goodbye.'

We often say I think I'll/I don't think I'll ... when we decide to do something:
- I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. I think I'll sit in the garden.
- It's raining. I don't think I'll go out.

Don't use the present simple (I go/I phone etc.) in sentences like these:
- I'll phone you tomorrow, okay? (not 'I phone you')
- I think I'll go to bed early. (not 'I go to bed')

Don't use I'll ... for something you decided before (Units 21–2):
- I'm working tomorrow. (not 'I'll work')
- I'm going to watch TV tonight. (not 'I'll watch')
- What are you doing at the weekend? (not 'what will you do')

Shall I ...? Shall we ...?

Shall I/Shall we ...? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?
- It's warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- 'Shall I phone you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?

- It's a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- 'Let's go out this evening.' 'Okay, what time shall we meet?' (Let's Unit 48)
24.1 Complete the sentences. Use I will (I’ll) + one of these verbs:

- carry
- do
- eat
- send
- show
- sit
- stay

1. My case is very heavy. I’ll carry it for you.
2. Enjoy your holiday. Thank you. I’ll send you a postcard.
3. I don’t want this banana. Well, I’m hungry. I’ll eat it.
4. Are you coming with me? No, I don’t think so. I’ll stay here.
6. Do you want a chair? No, it’s okay. I’ll sit on the floor.
7. How do you use this camera? Give it to me and I’ll show you.

24.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I’ll ... or I don’t think I’ll ... + one of these verbs:

- buy
- go
- have
- play

1. It’s cold. I don’t think I’ll go out.
2. I’m hungry. I think I’ll have something to eat.
3. I feel tired. I don’t think I’ll play tennis.
4. This camera is too expensive. I don’t think I’ll buy it.

24.3 Are the underlined words right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. I phone you tomorrow morning, okay? (WRONG) I’ll phone.
2. I phone my sister every Friday. (RIGHT)
3. I haven’t done the shopping yet. I do it later. (Correct)
4. ‘I don’t want to drive.’ ‘Okay, I drive.’ (Correct)
5. ‘How do you usually go to work?’ ‘I drive.’ (Correct)
6. ‘I haven’t got any money.’ ‘I lend you some.’ (Correct)

24.4 Write sentences with Shall I ...? Choose words from box A and box B.

A turn on make
- turn off open

B some sandwiches
- the television
- the window
- the light

1. It’s warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
2. This programme isn’t very good. Shall I turn it off?
3. I’m hungry. Shall I make some sandwiches?
4. It’s dark in this room. Shall I turn on the light?

24.5 Write sentences with Shall we ...? Choose words from box A and box B.

A what
- what time
- where
- who

B buy go invite meet

1. Let’s go out tonight. Okay, what time shall we meet?
2. Let’s have a holiday. Okay, what time shall we meet?
3. Let’s spend some money. Okay, what time shall we meet?
4. Let’s have a party. Okay, what time shall we meet?
UNIT 25  can and could

He can play the piano.

can + infinitive (can do/can play/can come etc.):

positive and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1/we/you/they</th>
<th>can</th>
<th>can't (cannot)</th>
<th>do play come see</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>can</th>
<th>1/we/you/they</th>
<th>do play come see</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I can do something. = I know how to do it or it is possible for me to do it:
- I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
- Ann can speak Italian but she can't speak Spanish.
- ‘Can you swim?’ ‘Yes, but not very well.’
- ‘Can you change twenty pounds?’ ‘I'm sorry I can’t.’
- Bill and Jenny can't come to the party next week.

In the past (yesterday/last week etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>can (do)</th>
<th>could (do)</th>
<th>couldn't (do)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before she came to Britain, she couldn't speak English. Now she can speak English very well.
- I was tired last night but I couldn't sleep.
- Bill and Jenny couldn't come to the party last week.

We use Can you ...? or Could you ...? when we ask people to do things:
- ‘Can (or Could) you open the door, please?’ ‘Yes, sure.’
- Can (or Could) you tell me the time, please?

We use Can I ...? when we ask if it is okay to do something:
- ‘Tom, can I take your umbrella?’ ‘Yes, of course.’
- (on the phone) Hello. Can I speak to Gary, please?

We use Can I have ...? to ask for something:
- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please?
UNIT 25  Exercises

25.1 Ask someone if he or she can do these things:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>swim</th>
<th>ski</th>
<th>play chess</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>run ten kilometres</th>
<th>ride a horse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Can you swim?</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>.................</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>.................................</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>.................</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>.................................</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>.................................</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use I can or I can't ...

| 7 | I can't swim. | 9 | ................................. | 11 | ................................. | 12 | ................................. |
| 8 | ................. | 10 | ................................. | 11 | ................................. |

25.2 Complete these sentences. Use can or can't + one of these verbs:

come  find  hear  see  speak

1. I'm sorry, but we can't come to your party next Saturday.
2. She got the job because she five languages.
3. You are speaking very quietly. I you.
4. Have you seen my bag? I it.
5. I like this hotel room. You the mountains from the window.

25.3 Complete these sentences. Use can't or couldn't + one of these verbs:

eat  go  go  see  sleep  understand

1. I was tired but I couldn't sleep...
2. She spoke very quickly. I her.
3. His eyes are not very good. He very well.
4. I wasn't hungry yesterday. I my dinner.
5. He to the concert next Saturday. He's working.
6. He to the meeting last week. He was ill.

25.4 What do you say in these situations? Use Can you ...?/Could you ...?/Can I ...?

1. (You are carrying a lot of things. You want me to open the door for you.)
   You say to me: Can you open the door (for me), please?

2. (We are having dinner. You want me to pass the salt.)
   You say to me: ................................................................. ?

3. (You want me to turn off the radio.) ................................................................. ?
4. (You want to borrow my pen.) ................................................................. ?
5. (You are in my house. You want to use my phone.) ................................................................. ?
6. (You want me to give you my address.) ................................................................. ?
UNIT 26  may and might

I may go to Paris.
(= Perhaps I will go to Paris.)

It might rain.
(= Perhaps it will rain.)

■ may or might + infinitive (may go/might go/may play/might play etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>may (not)</th>
<th>be go play come</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>might (not)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

■ may/might = it is possible that something will happen.
You can use may or might:
- I may go to the cinema this evening.
  or I might go to the cinema this evening. (= perhaps I will go)
- ‘When is Kay going to phone you?’ ‘I don’t know. She may phone this afternoon.’
- ‘Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.’
- ‘Do you think Jack will come to the party?’ ‘I’m not sure. He may.’ (= He may come.)
- ‘Are you going out tonight?’ ‘I might.’ (= I might go out.)

Study the difference:
- I’m playing tennis tomorrow. (sure)
  I may play tennis tomorrow. (possible)
- Barbara is going to France next week. (sure)
  Barbara might go to France next week. (possible)

■ The negative is may not or might not:
- I might not go to work tomorrow. (= perhaps I will not go)
- Sue may not come to the party. (= perhaps she will not come)

■ May I ...? = Is it okay to do something?:
- May I smoke? (= Is it okay if I smoke?/Can I smoke?)
- ‘May I sit here?’ ‘Yes, of course.’
UNIT 26 Exercises

26.1 Write sentences with may or might.

1 (perhaps I will go to the cinema) I may go to the cinema.
2 (perhaps I will see Tom tomorrow) I
3 (perhaps Kay will be late) Kay
4 (perhaps it will snow today) It
5 (perhaps I will wear my new jeans) I

These sentences are negative.

6 (perhaps they will not come)
7 (perhaps I will not go out tonight) I

26.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas but you are not sure. Use may or might + one of these:

? go away some shoes Spain fish ?

d this evening to a restaurant tomorrow

1 Where are you going for your holidays next year?
2 Where are you going tonight?
3 When will you see Ann again?
4 What are you going to buy when you go shopping?
5 What are you doing at the weekend?
6 When are you going to phone John?
7 What are you going to have for dinner tonight?

I'm not sure yet. I might go to Spain.
I don't know yet. I
I'm not sure.
I haven't decided yet.

26.3 What are you doing tomorrow? Write true sentences about yourself. Use: I'm (not) -ing or I'm (not) going to ...

1 (watch television) I'm not going to watch television.
2 (write a letter) I might write a letter.
3 (get up early) I
4 (go to the cinema)
5 (have a bath or shower)
6 (buy a newspaper)
7 (play tennis)
8 (make a telephone call)
must

must + infinitive (must do/must see etc.):

I/we/you/they  must  he/she/it  do  go  stop  write

- Use must when you think it is necessary or very important to do something:
  - The windows are very dirty. I must clean them.
  - It's a fantastic film. You must see it.
  - We must go to the bank today. We haven't got any money.

must is present or future:
  - I must go to the bank now.
  - I must go to the bank tomorrow.

- For the past (yesterday/last week etc.), we use had to + infinitive (had to go/had to do/had to write etc.):
  - I had to go to the bank yesterday. (= It was necessary for me to go to the bank.)
  - We had to walk home last night. There was no bus.

► Unit 29  have to ...

mustn't (must not)
I mustn't do it = it is important not to do it, it is a bad thing to do:
  - I must hurry. I mustn't be late.
  - I mustn't forget to phone George.
    (= I must remember)
  - You mustn't walk on the grass.
    (= Don't walk on the grass.)

needn't (need not)
I needn't do it = it is not necessary to do it, I don't need to do it:
  - I needn't clean the windows. They aren't dirty.
  - You needn't go to the bank. I can give you some money.

You can also say don't need to ... (= needn't):
  - I don't need to clean the windows.
  - You don't need to go to the bank.
27.1 Complete the sentences. Use **must** + one of these verbs:

- be
- buy
- go
- go help
- hurry
- learn
- meet
- phone
- read
- wash
- win

1. We **must** go to the bank today. We haven't got any money.
2. I **must** go to the bank today. I haven't got much time.
3. She's a very interesting person. You **must** help her.
4. I forgot to phone Dave last night. I **must** phone him today.
5. You **must** learn to drive. It's very useful.
6. This is an excellent book. You **must** read it.
7. We **must** buy some food. We've got nothing for dinner.
8. My hair is dirty. I **must** wash it.
9. I **must** go to the post office. I need some stamps.
10. I have a big problem. You **must** help me.
11. The game tomorrow is very important for us. We **must** win.
12. You can't always have things immediately. You **must** be patient.

27.2 Put in **must** or **had to**.

1. I **had to** go to the bank yesterday to get some money.
2. The windows are very dirty. I **must** clean them.
3. The windows were very dirty yesterday. I **must** clean them.
4. I **must** get up early tomorrow. I've got a lot to do.
5. Come on! We **must** hurry. We haven't got much time.
6. We arrived home very late last night. We **must** wait half an hour for a taxi.
7. These cakes are very nice. You **must** have one.
8. Ann came to the party but she didn't stay very long. She **must** leave early.
9. He didn't know how to use the machine. I **must** show him.
10. I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. I **must** run to get there on time.

27.3 Complete the sentences. Use **mustn't** or **needn't** + one of these verbs:

- be
- buy
- clean
- hurry
- lose
- stick
- take
- tell
- wait

1. The windows aren't dirty. You **needn't** clean them.
2. I **mustn't** be late.
3. This letter is very important. You **must** read it.
4. We have lots of time. We **mustn't** hurry.
5. We **mustn't** take an umbrella. It's not going to rain.
6. This is a secret. You **mustn't** tell anybody.
7. You **mustn't** take a newspaper. You can have mine.
8. I'm not ready yet but you **mustn't** wait for me.
   You go now and I'll come later.
9. (a parent speaking to a child) You **mustn't** stick out your tongue at people. It's not polite.
UNIT 28 should

You shouldn't smoke so much...

should + infinitive (should do/should write etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>l/we/you/they</th>
<th>should</th>
<th>shouldn't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>do go</td>
<td>stop write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- (Someone) should do something = It is a good thing to do or the right thing to do:
  - Tom should go to bed earlier. He usually goes to bed very late and he's always tired.
  - It's a good film. You should go and see it.
  - When you play tennis, you should always watch the ball.

- shouldn't (or should not) = It's not a good thing to do or it's not the right thing to do:
  - Tom shouldn't go to bed so late.
  - You work all the time. You shouldn't work so hard.

- We often use think with should:

I think ... should ...:
  - I think Carol should buy some new clothes.
    (= I think it's a good idea)
  - It's late. I think we should go home now.
  - 'Shall I buy this coat?'
    'Yes, I think you should.'

I don't think ... should ...:
  - I don't think you should work so hard.
    (= I don't think it's a good idea)
  - I don't think the police should carry guns.

Do you think ... should ...?:
  - Do you think I should buy this jacket?
  - What time do you think we should go home?

- must (Unit 27) is stronger than should:
  - It's a good film. You should go and see it.
  - It's a fantastic film. You must go and see it.

- Another way of saying should is ought to ...:
  - It's a good film. You ought to go and see it. (= You should go and see it.)
UNIT 28  Exercises

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use should + one of these verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>You should clean the room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>You should go to the library.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>You should read a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit</td>
<td>You should visit the museum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>You should watch the match.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>You should wear a coat.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When you play tennis, you should watch the ball.
2. You look tired. You should go to bed.
3. You should brush your teeth after every meal.
4. The city museum is very interesting. You should visit it.
5. When you are driving, you should wear a seat-belt.
6. It's a good book. You should read it.

28.2 Make sentences with shouldn't ... so ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scenario</th>
<th>Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You smoke too much</td>
<td>You shouldn't smoke so much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You work too hard</td>
<td>You shouldn't work so hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He eats too much</td>
<td>He shouldn't eat so much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She watches TV too often</td>
<td>She shouldn't watch TV so often.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You talk too much</td>
<td>You shouldn't talk too much.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

28.3 You ask a friend for advice. Make questions with Do you think I should ...?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scenario</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Buy this jacket</td>
<td>Do you think I should buy this jacket?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buy a new camera</td>
<td>Do you think I should buy a new camera?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get a new job</td>
<td>Do you think I should get a new job?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do an English course</td>
<td>Do you think I should do an English course?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Learn to drive</td>
<td>Do you think I should learn to drive?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

28.4 Write sentences with I think ... should ... Choose from:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have a holiday</td>
<td>You should have a holiday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to university</td>
<td>You should go to university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell it</td>
<td>You should sell it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go home now</td>
<td>You should go home now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to the doctor</td>
<td>You should go to the doctor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It's late. I think we should go home now.
2. Your car is very old. I think you should buy a new one.
3. They need a change. I think they should try something new.
4. He doesn't look well. I think he should see a doctor.
5. She's very intelligent. I think she should go to university.

Write sentences with I don't think ... should ... Choose from:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stay there</td>
<td>You don't think you should stay there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone them now</td>
<td>You don't think you should phone them now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to work today</td>
<td>You don't think you should go to work today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get married</td>
<td>You don't think you should get married.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. It's very late. I don't think you should stay there.
7. They're too young. I don't think they should go to university.
8. That hotel is too expensive for us. I don't think we should stay there.
9. You're not very well. I don't think you should go to work today.

28.5 What do you think? Write sentences with should.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Partnership</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I think everybody should</td>
<td>You should be nice to everyone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think</td>
<td>You should be kind to others.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't think</td>
<td>You shouldn't be mean to others.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I think everybody should be nice to everyone.
2. I think you should be kind to others.
3. I don't think you should be mean to others.
UNIT 29  have to ...

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- Jill starts work at 7.00, so she has to get up at 6.00.
- You have to pass a test before you can get a driving licence.

The past (yesterday/last week etc.) is had to ...
- I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
- There was no bus, so we had to walk home.

In questions and negatives we use do/does (present) and did (past):

**present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>I/we/you/they have to ...?</th>
<th>I/we/you/they don't have to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**past**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>did</th>
<th>I/we/you/they have to ...?</th>
<th>I/we/you/they didn't have to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- What time do you have to get up tomorrow morning?
- Does Jill have to work on Saturdays?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don't have to do (something) = it is not necessary to do it:
- I’m not working tomorrow, so I don’t have to get up early.
- Ian doesn't have to work very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We didn't have to wait very long. The bus soon came.

**have to and must (must ► Unit 27)**

Use must when you say what you think is necessary, when you are giving your opinion. Usually, have to is also possible:
- It's a fantastic film. You must see it. (or 'You have to see it'.)

Use have to (not must) when you are not giving your personal opinion:
- Jill won't be here this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor. (This is not my opinion - it is a fact.)
- In many countries, men have to do military service. (This is not my opinion - it is the law in those countries.)
29.1 Complete the sentences. Use have to or has to + one of these verbs:

1 My eyes are not very good. I ......have to wear...... glasses.
2 At the end of the course, all the students .................. a test.
3 Mary is studying literature. She ......................... a lot of books.
4 He doesn't understand much English, so I .................. very slowly to him.
5 George is not often at home. He ......................... a lot in his job.

29.2 Complete the sentences. Use have to or had to + one of these verbs:

answer buy change get go walk

1 There were no buses yesterday evening. We ............ had to walk ........ home.
2 I'm going to bed early tonight. I ....................... up early tomorrow morning.
3 It's late. I ......................... now, I'll see you tomorrow.
4 I went to the supermarket after work because I .................. some food.
5 This train doesn't go to London. You .................... at Bristol.
6 We did an exam yesterday. We .................... six questions out of ten.

29.3 Write questions. Some are present and some are past.

1 I have to get up early tomorrow. What time do you have to get up?
2 They had to leave early. Why?
3 We had to pay a lot of money. How much ... you?
4 I have to go home now. Why?
5 He had to wait a long time. How long ...
6 Joy has to work this evening. Why ...

29.4 Write sentences with don't/doesn't/didn't have to ...

1 Why are you going home now? You ....... don't have to go home now.
2 Why is she waiting? She doesn't
3 Why did you get up so early? You
4 Why do you want to decide now? We
5 Why does he work so hard? He

29.5 Put in have to/has to/had to or must.

1 It's a fantastic film, you ......must (or have to)....... see it.
2 In many countries men ..........have to......... do military service.
3 Sarah is a nurse. Sometimes she ......................... work at weekends.
4 I didn't have any money with me, so I ................... borrow some.
5 You can't park here for nothing. You ....................... pay.
6 I eat too much chocolate. I really .................. stop.
7 In tennis you ...................... hit the ball over the net.
UNIT 30 Would you like ...?

Would you like ...? = Do you want ...?
We use Would you like ...? to offer things:
- 'Would you like some coffee?'
  'Yes, please.'
- 'Would you like a cigarette?'
  'No, thank you. I don’t smoke.'
- 'What would you like, tea or coffee?'
  'Tea, please.'

We use Would you like to ...? to invite someone:
- Would you like to come to a party?
- 'Would you like to have dinner with me on Sunday?'
  'Yes, I'd love to.' (= I would love to have dinner with you.)
- Where would you like to go this evening?

I'd like (I would like) is a polite way of saying 'I want':
- (in a restaurant) I'd like fish, please.
- I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.
- I'd like to see the film on television this evening.

Study the difference:

Would you like ...? / I'd like ...

Do you like ...? / I like ...

'Would you like some tea?' = Do you want some tea? (an offer)

'Do you like tea?' = Do you think tea is nice?

- 'Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?' (tonight)
  'Yes, I'd love to go.'
but 'Do you like going to the cinema?' (in general)
  'Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.'

- I'd like an orange. (= I want an orange now.)
but I like oranges. (in general)

Unit 47 Do you like going ...? and Would you like to go ...?
30.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Use **Would you like ...?** + one of these: **an apple/a biscuit/a cake/some cheese/a cup of coffee/a sandwich.**

1. ... **Would you like a cup of coffee**? 
2. ... 
3. ... 
4. ... 
5. ... 
6. ... 

30.2 Invite people to do things. Use **Would you like to ...?**

1. (invite someone to come to a party next Friday) **Would you like to come to a party next Friday**? 
2. (invite someone to go to a concert on Sunday) ... on Sunday? 
3. (invite someone to play tennis tomorrow) ... ? 
4. (invite someone to dance) ... ?

30.3 Choose the correct form.

1. 'Do you like/Would you like a cigarette?' 'Yes, please.' 
   Would you like is right. 
2. 'Do you like/Would you like a banana?' 'No, thank you.' 
3. 'Do you like/Would you like bananas?' 'Yes, I love them.' 
4. 'What do you like/would you like to drink?' 'Water, please.' 
5. 'Do you like/Would you like to go out for a walk?' 'Not now. Perhaps later.'
6. I like/I’d like ice-cream but I don’t eat it very often. 
7. I’m tired. I like/I’d like to go to sleep. 
8. 'Do you like/Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thanks. I’m not hungry.'
UNIT 31  there is  there are

There's a man on the roof.  There's a train at 10.30.  There are seven days in a week.

singular:

there is ...  (there's)
there is not ...  (there isn't or there's not)
is there ...?

- There's a big tree in the garden.
- There's a good film on TV this evening. I'm going to watch it.
- Excuse me is there a hotel near here?
- 'Have you got any money?'
  'Yes, there's some in my bag.'
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

plural:

there are ...
there are not ...  (there aren't)
are there ...

- There are some big trees in the garden.
- Are there any letters for me today?
- This is a modern town. There aren't many old buildings here.
- How many players are there in a football team?
- There are 11 players in a football team.

■ there is and it is

there is

There's a book on the table.
not 'It's a book on the table.'

it is

I like this book. It's interesting.
(it = this book)

Compare:

- A: What's that noise? B: It's a train. (it = that noise)
  There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train. (it = the 10.30 train)
  - There is a lot of salt in this soup.
    I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it = this soup)
UNIT 31  Exercises

31.1 What's in the box? Ask questions with \textbf{Is there ...?} and \textbf{Are there ...?}

1 (any cigarettes?) \textbf{Are there any cigarettes in the box}?
2 (any books?) \textbf{in the box}?
3 (a man?) \textbf{?}
4 (any money?) \textbf{?}
5 (any clothes?) \textbf{?}
6 (a key?) \textbf{?}

31.2 Dunford is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences with \textbf{There is/isn't/are/aren't} ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Yes/No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sports centre</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming-pool</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hospital</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinemas</td>
<td>Yes (two)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big hotels</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cathedral</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 There is a sports centre in Dunford.
2 ........................................ in Dunford.
3 ........................................
4 ........................................
5 ........................................
6 ........................................
7 ........................................

31.3 Put in \textbf{there is/there isn't/there are/there aren't/are there?}

1 Dunford is a very modern town. \textbf{There aren't} many old buildings.
2 Look! \textbf{a photograph of George in the newspaper!}
3 Excuse me, \textbf{a restaurant near here?}
4 ........................................ five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
5 We can't take any photographs. \textbf{a film in the camera.}
6 How many students ........................................ in your class?
7 Where can we sit? ........................................ any chairs.
8 ........................................ \textbf{a bus from the city centre to the airport?}

31.4 Write sentences with \textbf{There are} ... Choose the right number: \textbf{7 9 15 26 30 50}.

1 (days/a week) \textbf{There are seven days in a week.}
2 (states/the USA) ........................................
3 (players/a rugby team) ........................................
4 (planets/the solar system) ........................................
5 (letters/the English alphabet) ........................................
6 (days/September) ........................................

31.5 Put in \textbf{there} or \textbf{it}.

1 \textbf{There's} a train at 10.30. \textbf{It's} a fast train.
2 I'm not going to buy this shirt. \textbf{It's} very expensive.
3 'What's wrong?' \textbf{'There's} something in my eye.'
4 \textbf{There's} a car in front of the house. \textbf{Is} your car?
5 'Is \textbf{there} anything on TV?' \textbf{Yes,} \textbf{there's} a film at 8.15.'
6 \textbf{There's} a letter on the floor. \textbf{Is} \textbf{it} for you?
UNIT 32  there was/were/has been/will be

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>there</th>
<th>is/are</th>
<th>was/were</th>
<th>has been/have been</th>
<th>will be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Unit 31
  - was/were  Unit 11
  - has/have been  Units 15–17
  - will  Unit 23

there was/were

The time is now 11 o’clock.
There was a train at 10.30.

Compare:

there is/are (present)
- There is a good film on TV this evening.
- We are staying at a very big hotel. There are 250 rooms.
- I’m hungry but there isn’t anything to eat.
- Are there any letters for me this morning?

there was/were (past)
- There was a good film on TV yesterday evening.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. There were 250 rooms.
- When I arrived home, I was hungry but there wasn’t anything to eat.
- Were there any letters for me yesterday morning?

there has been/there have been

There’s been an accident.

- Look! There’s been an accident. (there’s been = there has been)
- This road is very dangerous. There have been many accidents on it.

but  There was an accident last night. (not ‘has been ... last night’  Unit 19)

there will be

- Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- (from the weather forecast) Tomorrow the weather will be cold. There will be some rain in the afternoon.
32.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty but before it was full of things. Write sentences about the things in the list. Use There was/were ...

an armchair  some books  a carpet  a clock  some flowers
some pictures  a sofa  a small table

1. There was a clock on the wall near the window.
2. on the floor.
3. on the wall near the door.
4. in the middle of the room.
5. on the table.
6. on the shelves.
7. in the corner near the door.
8. opposite the door.

32.2 Put in there was/there wasn't/there were/there weren't/there were there?

1. I was hungry but there wasn't anything to eat.
2. Were there any letters for me yesterday?
3. a football match on TV last night but I didn't see it.
4. 'We stayed at a nice hotel.' 'Did you have a swimming-pool?'
5. The suitcase was empty. any clothes in it.
6. I found a wallet in the street but any money in it.
7. 'many people at the meeting? ' No, very few.'
8. We didn't visit the museum. enough time.
9. I'm sorry I'm late. a lot of traffic.
10. The radio wasn't working because any batteries in it.

32.3 Put in there is/there are/there was/there were/there has been/there will be.

1. There was a good film on TV yesterday evening.
2. Look! There has been an accident. Call an ambulance!
3. 24 hours in a day.
4. a party at the club last Friday but I didn't go.
5. Look! This bag is empty. nothing in it.
6. 'Why are those policemen outside the bank?' a robbery.'
7. When we arrived at the cinema a long queue outside.
8. somebody at the station to meet you when you arrive tomorrow.
UNIT 33  it ...

| time | What time is it?  
|      | It's half past ten. (10.30)  
|      | It's late.  
|      | It's time to go home.  

| day  | What day is it?  
|      | It's 16 March.  
|      | It's Thursday today.  
|      | It's my birthday today.  

| distance | How far is it from London to Bristol?  
|          | It's a long way from here to the airport.  
|          | We can walk home. It isn't far.  
|          | It's 20 miles from our village to the nearest town.  

★ Use far in questions (is it far?) and negatives (it isn't far). Use a long way in positive sentences (it’s a long way).

| weather | It's raining. It isn't raining. Is it snowing?  
|         | It rains/snows/rained/snowed.  
|         | It's warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.  
|         | It's a nice day today.  

Compare it and there:  
- It rains a lot in winter. (rains is a verb)  
  - but There is a lot of rain in winter. (rain is a noun)  
- It was very windy. (windy is an adjective)  
  - but There was a strong wind yesterday. (wind is a noun)

there is and it is ➔ Unit 31

- It's nice to ... etc.

| It's easy/difficult/impossible/dangerous/safe/stupid/cheap/expensive/nice/good/wonderful/terrible etc. | to ... |

- It's nice to see you again. (it = to see you again)  
- It's impossible to understand her. (it = to understand her)  
- It wasn't easy to find your house. (it = to find your house)

Don't forget it:  
- It's raining again. (not 'Is raining again.')  
- Is it true that you are married? (not 'Is true that ...?')
UNIT 33  Exercises

33.1 Put in it is (it's) or is it?
1 What time is it?  
2 It's raining again.  
3 Very late. We must go home.  
4 Cold out? 'Yes, put on your coat.'  
5 True that Bill can fly a helicopter?  
6 'What day today? Thursday?' 'No, Friday.'  
7 About three miles from the airport to the city centre.  
8 Possible for me to phone you at your office?  
9 'Shall we walk to the restaurant?' 'I don't know. How far?'  
10 Jack's birthday today. He's 27.  
11 A pity that Ann can't come to the party on Saturday.  
12 I don't believe it! Impossible!  

33.2 Write questions with How far ...?
1 (here/the airport?) How far is it from here to the airport?  
2 (New York/Washington?) How far is it from New York to Washington?  
3 (your house/the station?) How far is it from your house to the station?  
4 (the hotel/the beach?) How far is it from the hotel to the beach?  

33.3 Put in it or there.
1 It rains a lot in winter.  
2 There was a strong wind yesterday.  
3 Look! It's snowing.  
4 We can't go skiing. It isn't any snow.  
5 'Did rain yesterday?' 'No, it was fine.'  
6 It's dark in this room. Can you turn on the light?  
7 It's a big black cloud in the sky. It's going to rain.  
8 It was a storm last night. Did you hear it?  
9 It's a long way from here to the nearest shop.
UNIT 34  go/go ing work/working play/playing etc.

- go/work/play etc. (infinitive)
  We use the infinitive (go/work/play/be etc.) after:

| will      | Tom will be here tomorrow.  |
| shall     | Shall I open the window?   |
| can       | I can't play tennis.       |
| could     | Could you pass the salt, please? |
| may       | May I smoke?               |
| might     | I might be late tonight.   |
| must      | It's late. I must go now.  |
| should    | You shouldn't work so hard.|
| would     | Would you like some coffee?|

- We use the infinitive with do/does/did:

  - do  Do you work? I don't work.
  - does How much does it cost? She doesn't play tennis.
  - did What time did they leave? We didn't sleep very well.

- to go/to work/to play etc. (to + infinitive)
  We use to ... (to go/to work/to play/to be etc.) after:

  - (I'm) going (to ...) I'm going to play tennis tomorrow.
  - (I) have (to ...) I have to go now.
  - (I) want (to ...) Everybody has to eat.
  - (I) would like (to ...) I'd like to be rich.

- going/working/playing etc.
  We use -ing with am/is/are/was/were:

  | am/is/are | + -ing present continuous |
  | was/were  | past continuous          |

  - Please be quiet. I'm working.
  - Tom isn't working today.
  - What time are you going out?
  - We didn't go out because it was raining.
  - What were you doing at 11 o'clock yesterday morning?
UNIT 34  Exercises

34.1 Finish each of these sentences. Write ‘... phone Jack’ or ‘... to phone Jack’.

1 I’ll phone Jack. ........................................ 6 I have ..............................................
2 I’m going to phone Jack. .............................. 7 You should ...........................................
3 Can you phone Jack? .................................. 8 I want ............................................... 9 I might ...................................................
4 Shall I phone Jack? .................................... 10 You must ............................................
5 I’d like ............................................... ........................

34.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (go/work etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (going/working etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do/doing</th>
<th>drive/driving</th>
<th>eat/eating</th>
<th>get/getting</th>
<th>go/going</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>listen/listening</td>
<td>rain/raining</td>
<td>sleep/sleeping</td>
<td>stay/staying</td>
<td>wait/waiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch/watching</td>
<td>wear/wearing</td>
<td>work/working</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Please be quiet. I’m working...
2 I feel tired. I didn’t sleep... very well last night.
3 What time do you usually .......... up in the morning?
4 ‘Where are you ..........?’ ‘To the shop.’
5 Did you .......... television last night?
6 Put up your umbrella. It’s ............
7 The police stopped her because she was .......... the car too fast.
8 You can turn off the radio. I’m not .......... to it.
9 They didn’t .......... anything because they weren’t hungry.
10 ‘What are you .......... this evening?’ ‘I’m .......... at home.’
11 ‘Does she always .......... glasses?’ ‘No, only for reading.’
12 My friends were .......... for me when I arrived.

34.3 Put in the correct form. Choose the infinitive (go/open etc.), to + infinitive (to go/to open etc.) or -ing (going/opening etc.).

1 Shall I open... the window? (open)
2 It’s late. I have ...to go... now. (go)
3 Tom isn’t working... this week. He’s on holiday. (work)
4 Do you want .......... out this evening? (go)
5 ‘Where are you .......... for your holidays this year?’ (go)
6 ‘We’re not sure, but we may .......... to Italy.’ (go)
7 I’m afraid I can’t .......... you. (help)
8 It’s a really good film. You must .......... it. (see)
9 What time do you have .......... tomorrow morning? (leave)
10 Do you think it will .......... this afternoon? (rain)
11 I’m hungry. I’m going .......... something to eat. (have)
12 My brother is .......... physics at university. (study)
13 He spoke very quietly. I couldn’t .......... him. (hear)
14 ‘I’m very tired. I must .......... down for a few minutes.’ (lie)
15 I was very tired. I had .......... down for a few minutes. (lie)
16 Would you like .......... out for dinner this evening? (go)
17 You don’t look well. I don’t think you should .......... out. (go)
UNIT 35  be/have/do in present and past tenses

■ be (am/is/are/was/were) -ing (cleaning/working/doing etc.)
   present continuous and past continuous
   
am/is/are -ing
   present continuous
   ► Units 3-4, 21
   
   - Please be quiet. I'm working.
   - It isn't raining at the moment.
   - What are you doing this evening?

   was/were -ing
   past continuous
   ► Unit 12
   
   - I was working when she arrived.
   - It wasn't raining, so we went out.
   - What were you doing at 3 o'clock?

■ be (am/is/are/was/were) + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)
   passive
   
am/is/are + past participle
   present passive
   ► Unit 20
   
   - The room is cleaned every day.
   - I am never invited to parties.
   - Oranges are imported into Britain.

   was/were + past participle
   past passive
   ► Unit 20
   
   - The room was cleaned yesterday.
   - These houses were built 100 years ago.
   - How was the window broken?

■ have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been/gone etc.)
   present perfect
   
   have/has + past participle
   present perfect
   ► Units 15-17
   
   - I have cleaned my room.
   - Tom has lost his passport.
   - Barbara hasn't been to Canada.
   - Where have they gone?

■ do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)
   present simple and past simple - negatives and questions
   
do/does + infinitive
   present simple negatives
   and questions ► Units 6-7
   
   - I like coffee but I don't like tea
   - Tom doesn't smoke.
   - What do you usually do at weekends?
   - Does Barbara live alone?

   did + infinitive
   past simple negatives
   and questions ► Unit 10
   
   - I didn't watch TV yesterday.
   - It didn't rain last week.
   - What time did Barbara go out?
UNIT 35  Exercises

35.1 Put in is/are/do/does.

1. Do you clean your teeth every day?
2. Where are they going?
3. Why are you looking at me?
4. Bill live in London?
5. you like dancing?
6. the sun shining?
7. What time the shops close?
8. you working tomorrow?
9. Alice work on Saturdays?
10. What this word mean?
11. What time you going out?
12. What time you usually go out?
13. it raining?
14. you feeling all right?

35.2 Put in am not/isn't/aren't/don't/doesn't. All these sentences are negative.

1. Tom doesn't smoke.
2. It isn't raining at the moment.
3. I want to go out this evening.
4. I going out this evening.
5. George working this week.
6. My parents watch television very often.
7. Tom and Ann coming to the party next week.
8. Barbara speak a foreign language.
9. I'm sorry, I understand. Can you say that again, please?
10. You can turn off the television. I watching it.

35.3 Put in was/were/did/have/has.

1. Where were your shoes made?
2. Did you go out last night?
3. What you doing at 10.30?
4. Where he buy his new coat?
5. Where she born?
6. Where you born?
7. Chris gone home?
8. What time she go?
9. What she wearing yesterday?
10. When this road built?
11. Why they go home early?
12. How long they been married?
13. you see Jim last night?
14. you ever seen a ghost?

35.4 Put in is/are/was/were/have/has.

1. Oranges are imported into Britain.
2. Joe has lost his passport.
3. Glass made from sand.
4. I made some coffee. Would you like some?
5. This shopping centre built ten years ago.
6. The streets in this town cleaned every day.
7. you finished your work?
8. Jill gone to Italy for a holiday.
9. These are very old photographs. They taken a long time ago.
10. George and Linda are here. They just arrived.
11. She's Italian but she born in France.
12. Can you tell me how this word pronounced?
UNIT 36  Regular and irregular verbs

■ Past simple and past participle
The past simple and past participle of regular verbs is **-ed:**
clean → cleaned   live → lived   paint → painted   study → studied

*past simple (► Unit 9):*
  - I **cleaned** my shoes yesterday.
  - Charlie **studied** engineering at university.

We use the *past participle* for the *present perfect* and the *passive.*

*present perfect = have/has + past participle (► Units 15-17):*
  - I **have cleaned** my shoes.
  - Joan **has lived** in London for ten years.

*passive = be (am/is/are/was/were) + past participle (► Unit 20):*
  - These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
  - My car **was repaired** last week.

■ Irregular verbs
The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs are not **-ed:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>make</th>
<th>break</th>
<th>cut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>make</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>buy</th>
<th>cut</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  - I **made** a cake yesterday. (*past simple*)
  - I **have made** some coffee. (*past participle – present perfect*)
  - Butter is **made** from milk. (*past participle – present passive*)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>break</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>begin</th>
<th>go</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>past simple</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past participle</td>
<td>broken</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>begun</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  - Somebody **broke** this window last night. (*past simple*)
  - Somebody **has broken** this window. (*past participle – present perfect*)
  - This window **was broken** last night. (*past participle – past passive*)

► Appendix 1  List of irregular verbs  ► Appendix 2  Irregular verbs in groups
### UNIT 36  Exercises

#### 36.1 Write the past simple/past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple/Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 36.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 36.3 Put the verb into the right form.

1. I washed my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2. Somebody has broken this window. (break)
3. I feel good. I slept very well last night. (sleep)
4. We saw a very good film yesterday. (see)
5. It rained a lot when we were on holiday. (rain)
6. I've lost my bag. Have you seen it? (see)
7. George's bicycle was stolen last week. (steal)
8. I have to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9. Have you finished your book yet? (finish)
10. These houses were built about 20 years ago. (build)
11. Ann learned to drive when she was 18. (learn)
12. I've never ridden a horse in my life. (ride)
13. Yesterday I fell off my bicycle and hurt my leg. (fall/hurt)
14. She's a good friend of mine. I've known her a long time. (know)

#### 36.4 Complete these sentences with a verb from the list. Put the verb into the correct form, past simple or past participle.

- cost
- drive
- fly
- make
- meet
- sell
- speak
- swim
- tell
- wake

1. I have made some coffee. Would you like some?
2. I know Gary but I've never met his wife.
3. We were woken up by a loud noise in the middle of the night.
4. She jumped into the river and swam to the other side.
5. Many different languages are spoken in the Philippines.
6. Our holiday cost a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.
7. Have you ever driven a very fast car?
8. All the tickets for the concert were sold very quickly.
9. Have you met John about your new job?
10. A bird flew in through the open window while we were having our dinner.
UNIT 37  I am/I don't etc.

She isn't tired but **he is**.
(*he is* = he is tired)

He smokes but **she doesn't**.
(*she doesn't* = she doesn't smoke)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am/is/are</th>
<th>was/were</th>
<th>have/has</th>
<th>do/does/did</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>must</td>
<td>might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>may</td>
<td>might</td>
<td>would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>should</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use these verbs with other verbs (**am going**/**has seen**/**can't come** etc.) but you can also use them alone:

- I haven't got a car but my sister **has**. (= my sister has got a car)
- 'Please help me.' 'I'm sorry, I can't.' (= I can't help you)
- 'Are you tired?' 'I **was** but I'm **not** now.' (= I was tired but I'm not tired now.)
- 'Do you think Ann will come?' 'She might.' (= She might come.)
- 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I'm afraid I must.' (= I must go)

You can use these verbs in this way with **Yes** ... and **No** ...:

- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, it is./No, it isn't.'
- 'Have you ever been to Canada?' 'Yes, I have./No, I haven't.'
- 'Will Alan be here tomorrow?' 'Yes, he will./No, he won't.'

Use **do/does** for the **present simple**:

- I don't like hot weather but Sue **does**. (= Sue likes hot weather)
- She works very hard but I **don't**. (= I don't work very hard)
- 'Do you enjoy your work?' 'Yes, I do.'

Use **did** for the **past simple**:

- 'Did you and John enjoy the film?' 'I **did** but John **didn't**.'
  (= I enjoyed it but John didn't enjoy it.)
- 'Did it rain yesterday?' 'No, it **didn't**.'

You cannot use the short forms *'m/*'s/*'re/*'ve/*'ll at the end of a sentence. Use the full forms **am/is/are/have/will** etc.:

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I **am**.' (*not* 'Yes, I'm.')
UNIT 37  Exercises

37.1 Complete these sentences with do/does/did.
1 I don't like hot weather but Sue ........
2 You don't know John very well but I ........................................
3 I didn't enjoy the party but my friends ............................
4 I don't want to go out this evening but Peter .....................
5 Ann doesn't smoke but all her friends ..............................
6 My mother doesn't wear glasses but my father ............................

37.2 Complete these sentences with don't/doesn't/didn't.
1 Sue likes hot weather but I ........
2 I like football but my brother ..................
3 I wanted to go out last night but Jan ................
4 Kate lives in London but her parents ..........................
5 The workers in the factory work hard but the manager ............
6 Val played tennis last weekend but Tom ................

37.3 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb each time (is/have/can etc.).
1 Kay wasn't hungry but we were..................
2 You haven't met Jack's parents but I ............
3 Bill can't drive but all his friends ................
4 I'm not intelligent but you .........................
5 I'm not going to the party tomorrow night but George ............
6 Their house wasn't very big but the garden ...................
7 I wasn't very tired but Philip and Joy ............... 
8 Diana won't be here tomorrow but I ....................
9 I don't smoke but my brother ............................
10 I haven't got a video camera but I know somebody who ................

37.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/can't etc.).
1 My sister can play the piano but I can't ....................
2 Tom's house is big but my house .....................
3 I'll be here tomorrow but Chris ....................... 
4 I've already seen the film but Ian ....................
5 One of the men was wearing a coat but the other man ..............
6 I got up early this morning but James .................
7 My friends are going out tonight but I ..................
8 Julia watches television a lot but I ..........................

37.5 Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have/No, I'm not etc.
1 Are you British?  No, I'm not ..............................
2 Have you got a car? ...........................................
3 Is it raining? ...................................................
4 Do you feel well? ..............................................
5 Are you tired? ...................................................
6 Do you like chocolate? ........................................
7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow? ..............................
8 Have you ever played tennis? ..............................
9 Did you buy anything yesterday? .............................
10 Were you born in Europe? ...............................
UNIT 38  Have you?/Are you?/Don't you? etc.

In conversation, you can say have you?/is it?/can't he? etc. to show that you are interested or surprised. You can use these verbs in this way:

**am/is/are**  **was/were**  **have/has**  **do/does/did**  **can**  **will.**

- 'You're late.' 'Oh, am I? I'm sorry.'
- 'I was ill last week.' 'Were you? I didn't know that.'
- 'It's raining again.' 'Is it? It was sunny five minutes ago.'

- 'Bill can't drive.' 'Can't he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm not hungry.' 'Aren't you? I am.'
- 'Sue isn't at work today.' 'Isn't she? Is she ill?'

Use **do/does** for the present simple, did for the past simple:
- 'I speak four languages.' 'Do you? Which ones?'
- 'Tom doesn't eat meat.' 'Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?'
- 'Linda got married last week.' 'Did she? Really?'

**Question tags**

You can use ... have you?/... is it?/ ... can't she? etc. at the end of a sentence. These 'endings' are question tags (= mini-questions).

A positive sentence → a negative question tag  
A negative sentence → a positive question tag

**positive → negative**

It's a beautiful day, isn't it?  
She lives in London, doesn't she?  
You closed the window, didn't you?  
Those shoes are nice, aren't they?  
Tom will be at home tomorrow, won't he?

**negative → positive**

Yes, it's lovely.  
Yes, that's right.  
Yes, I think so.  
Yes, very nice.  
Yes, I think so.

That isn't your car, is it?  
You don't smoke, do you?  
You haven't met my mother, have you?  
You won't be late, will you?

No, my car is white.  
No, never.  
No, I haven't.  
No, don't worry.
UNIT 38 Exercises

38.1 Answer with Do you?/Doesn’t she?/Did they? etc.

1. I speak four languages. 
2. I work in a bank.
3. Tom phoned me last night.
4. Jill doesn’t like me.
5. I didn’t eat anything.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do you?</th>
<th>Which ones?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I work in a bank too.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What did he say?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Why not?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weren’t you hungry?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I don’t feel tired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

38.2 Answer with Have you?/Haven’t you?/Did she?/Didn’t she? etc.

1. I’ve bought a new car.
2. Tim doesn’t eat meat.
3. I’ve lost my key.
4. Sue was born in Rome.
5. I can’t swim.
6. I didn’t sleep well last night.
7. This ring is gold.
8. I’m not coming with you.
9. I met Pam last week.
10. She works in a factory.
11. I won’t be here next week.
12. The clock isn’t working.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have you?</th>
<th>What make is it?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Does he eat fish?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When did you last have it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I didn’t know that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You must learn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Was the bed uncomfortable?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It’s very beautiful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Why not?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How is she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What kind of factory?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Where will you be?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It was working this morning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

38.3 Complete these sentences with a question tag (isn’t it?/haven’t you? etc.).

1. It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it? 
2. They’re on holiday, aren’t they? 
3. She was angry, wasn’t she? 
4. You’ve been to Paris, haven’t you? 
5. You smoke, don’t you? 
6. He looks very tired, doesn’t he? 
7. You’ll help me, won’t you?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Yes, it’s lovely.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes, they’re in Portugal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, very angry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, many times.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, but not often.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, he works too hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, of course I will.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

38.4 Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (is it?/do you? etc.) or negative (isn’t it?/don’t you? etc.).

1. You haven’t got a car, have you? 
2. You aren’t tired, are you? 
3. Carol is a very nice person, isn’t she? 
4. You can play the piano, can you? 
5. You don’t know Mr Bond, do you? 
6. Sally went to university, didn’t she? 
7. The film wasn’t very good, was it?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No, I can’t drive.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No, I’m fine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, I like her very much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, but not very well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, I’ve never met him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, she studied history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, it was terrible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
too and either

We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a *positive* verb:
- 'I'm happy.' 'I'm happy **too**.'
- 'I enjoyed the film.' 'I enjoyed it **too**.'
- Mary is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor **too**.

We use **either** after a *negative* verb (am **not**/isn't/can't etc.):
- 'I'm not happy.' 'I'm **not** happy **either**.' (not 'I'm not happy too')
- 'I can't cook.' 'I can't **either**.'
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers **either**.

So am I/Neither do I etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>am/is/are ...</th>
<th>was/were ...</th>
<th>do/does ...</th>
<th>did ...</th>
<th>have/has ...</th>
<th>can ...</th>
<th>will ...</th>
<th>must ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>so</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>neither</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**So am I** (= I am too), **So have I** (= I have too) etc.:
- 'I'm tired.' **So am I**. (not 'So I am.')
- 'I was late for work today.' **So was John**.
- 'I work in a bank.' **So do I**.
- 'We went to the cinema last night.' 'Did you? So did we.'

**Neither am I** (= I'm not either), **Neither have I** (= I haven't either) etc.:
- 'I haven't got a key.' **Neither have I**. (not 'Neither I have.')
- 'Ann can't cook.' **Neither can Tom**.
- 'I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.' **Neither will I**.
- 'I never eat meat.' **Neither do I**.

You can also use **Nor** ... (= **Neither**):
- 'I'm not married.' **Nor am I**. (= Neither am I.)
UNIT 39  Exercises

39.1 Put in too or either.

1  I'm happy. 
2  I'm not hungry. 
3  I'm tired. 
4  It rained on Saturday. 
5  Ann can't drive a car. 
6  I don't smoke. 
7  Jane's mother is a teacher.

1  I'm happy too. 
2  I'm not hungry. 
3  I'm tired. 
4  It rained on Sunday. 
5  She can't ride a bicycle. 
6  I don't smoke. 
7  Her father is a teacher.

39.2 Answer with So ... I (So am I/So do I/So can I etc.).

1  I went to bed late last night. 
2  I'm hungry. 
3  I've been to Rome. 
4  I want to go home now. 
5  I'll be late tomorrow. 
6  I was surprised at the news.

So did I.

39.3 Answer with Neither ... I.

7  I can't play the piano. 
8  I didn't buy a newspaper. 
9  I haven't got any money. 
10  I'm not working tomorrow. 
11  I don't know them very well.

39.3 You are talking to Maria. Write true answers about yourself. Where possible, use So ... I or Neither ... I. Look the examples carefully.

M aria

1  I'm tired. 
2  I can't play tennis. 
3  I'm learning English. 
4  I can ride a bicycle. 
5  I'm not tired. 
6  I like dancing. 
7  I don't like cold weather. 
8  I slept well last night. 
9  I've never been to India. 
10  I don't go to the cinema very often. 
11  I'm going out tomorrow evening. 
12  I haven't got a headache. 
13  I didn't watch TV last night. 
14  I need a holiday. 

So am I. or I'm not (tired). 
Neither can I. or I can (play tennis).
NEGATIVES: ISN'T/HAVEN'T/DON'T ETC.

- We use not (n't) in negative sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>am not ('m not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>is not (isn't or 's not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>are not (aren't or 're not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>was not (wasn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>were not (weren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have not (haven't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>has not (hasn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>will not (won't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>would not (wouldn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>cannot (can't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>could not (couldn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>should not (shouldn't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>must not (mustn't)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Present simple negative (Unit 6):
  
  I/we/you/they do not (don't) + infinitive (work/live/go etc.)
  
  He/she/it does not (doesn't) + infinitive

- Past simple negative (Unit 10):
  
  I/they/he/she etc. did not (didn't) + infinitive

- The negative of 'Look!', 'Go away!' etc. is 'Don't ...!':

  Look! → Don't look!
  Go away! → Don't go away!

- Do can also be the main verb (don't do/didn't do etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do it.</td>
<td>Don't do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He does a lot of work.</td>
<td>He doesn't do much work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I did the examination.</td>
<td>I didn't do the examination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 40  Exercises

40.1 Make these sentences negative.
1 I'm tired. I'm not tired. .......... 7 We were late. ..................
2 He's got a car. He hasn't got a car. 8 I'm going out. ..................
3 They are married. 9 She has gone out. ..................
4 I've had dinner. 10 I'll be late tonight. ..................
5 It's cold today. 11 It was expensive. ..................
6 I can see you. 12 You should go. ..................

40.2 Make negatives with don't/doesn't/didn't.
1 He saw me. He didn't see me. .......... 7 They understood. ..................
2 Do it! Don't do it. .......... 8 Phone me tonight. ..................
3 I like fish. .......... 9 I did the shopping. ..................
4 She smokes. .......... 10 He lives near here. ..................
5 Look at me! .......... 11 It rained yesterday. ..................
6 I got up early. .......... 12 They did the work. ..................

40.3 Make these sentences negative.
1 It's raining. It isn't raining. .......... 8 We watched TV. ..................
2 She saw the film. She didn't see the film. 9 They were angry. ..................
3 She can swim. .......... 10 He'll be pleased. ..................
4 They're on holiday. .......... 11 I went to the bank. ..................
5 He speaks German. .......... 12 She's got a camera. ..................
6 I enjoyed the film. .......... 13 Open the door. ..................
7 It's important. .......... 14 I could hear them. ..................

40.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/don't etc.).
1 The sun is shining. It isn't raining.
2 She isn't rich. She hasn't got much money.
3 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I ............... hungry.'
4 I ............... hear you. Please speak louder.
5 George ............... write letters very often. He prefers to phone.
6 I don't like this book. It ............... very interesting.
7 'Where is Jill?' 'I ............... know. I ............... seen her today.'
8 She ............... go to work yesterday because she ............... very well, but she's better today.
9 Be careful! ............... fall!
10 We ............... take an umbrella with us because the weather was fine.
11 I've been to Spain many times but I ............... been to Portugal.
12 When we were in London, we stayed with friends. We ............... stay at a hotel.
13 She ............... be here tomorrow. She's going away.
14 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me! I ............... do it.'
15 The box was too heavy. We tried to lift it but we ...............
UNIT 41  Questions (1): is it ...? have you ...? do they ...? etc.

positive  you are  You are eating.
question  are you  What are you eating?

In questions, the first verb (is/are/have etc.) is before the subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive subject + verb</th>
<th>question verb + subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am late.</td>
<td>Am I late?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That seat is free.</td>
<td>Is that seat free?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She was angry.</td>
<td>Why was she angry?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David has gone.</td>
<td>Where has David gone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have got a car.</td>
<td>Have you got a car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They will be here.</td>
<td>When will they be here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom can swim.</td>
<td>Can Tom swim?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Be careful with word order: the subject is after the first verb:
- Where has David gone? (not 'Where has gone David?')
- Why are those people waiting? (not 'Why are waiting those people?')

Present simple questions:  do (I/we/you/they) + infinitive (work/live/go etc.)
Past simple questions:  did (you/they/she etc.) + infinitive

Do can also be the main verb (do you do/did she do etc.):
- What do you usually do at weekends?
- 'What does your sister do?' 'She works in a bank.'
- 'I broke my leg.' 'How did you do that?' (not 'How did you that?')

Negative questions with Why ...? (Why isn't ...?/Why don't ...? etc.):
Be careful with word order in these questions:
- Where's John? Why isn't he here? (not 'Why he isn't here?')
- Why can't Paula come to the meeting? (not 'Why Paula can't ...')
- Why didn't you phone me last night?

► Units 42-3  Questions (2-3)
41.1 Write questions.

1. I can swim. (and you?) Can you swim? ?
2. I smoke. (and Jim?) Does Jim smoke? ?
3. I was late this morning. (and you?) ?
4. I've got a key. (and Ann?) ?
5. I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?) ?
6. I'm going out this evening. (and Tom?) ?
7. I've finished my work. (and you?) ?
8. I like my job. (and you?) ?
9. I live near the city centre. (and Pam?) ?
10. I enjoyed my holiday. (and you?) ?
11. I had a shower this morning. (and you?) ?

41.2 You are asking somebody questions. Write the full questions.

(tired?) Are you tired? ?
(played the piano?) ?
(married?) ?
(live in a city?) ?
(been to India?) ?
(go out last night?) ?
(like chocolate?) ?
(watched TV yesterday?) ?
(slept well last night?) ?

Yes, a little.
Yes, but not very well.
No, I'm single.
No, in a small village.
No, never.
No, I stayed at home.
Yes, I love it.
No, I never watch TV.
No, not very well.

41.3 Ask questions.

I want to go.
They aren't here.
It's important.
I'm reading.
Jan went home.
Dave and Mary are going away.
I like music.
I met Tim.
He is going to stay here.
The children have gone.
I can't come to the party.
I broke the window.
I need some money.
She did her driving test.
I don't like her.
It rains a lot.

Where do you want to go? ?
Why aren't they here? ?
Why? you? ?
What? ?
What time? ?
When? ?
What kind of music? ?
Where? ?
How long? ?
Where? ?
Why? ?
How? ?
How much money? ?
When? ?
Why? ?
How often? ?
UNIT 42  Questions (2): Who saw you? Who did you see?

Fred saw Julia.

Who saw Julia? Fred.

Who did Fred see? Julia.

Fred saw Julia

subject

Somebody saw Julia.

Who saw Julia?

Fred.

object

Fred saw somebody.

Who did Fred see?

Julia.

'who' is the subject

'Julia' is the object

'who' is the object

'Fred' is the subject

In these questions who or what is the subject:

- Who lives in that house? (= Somebody lives there – who?)
  (not ‘Who does live ...?’)
- What happened? (= Something happened – what?)
  (not ‘What did happen?’)
- What's (= What is) burning?
- Who's got (= Who has got) my key?

In these questions who or what is the object:

- Who did you meet yesterday? (= You met somebody – who?)
- What did she say? (= She said something – what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was he wearing?

Compare:

- George likes eggs. → Who likes eggs? George.
  What does George like? Eggs.
- Jill won some money. → Who won some money? Jill.
  What did Jill win? Some money.

Use who for people (somebody), what for things, ideas etc. (something):

- Who is your favourite singer?
- What is your favourite song?
UNIT 42  Exercises

42.1 Make questions with who and what. In these sentences who/what is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window.
2. Something happened.
3. Somebody is coming.
4. Somebody took my umbrella.
5. Something made me angry.
6. Somebody wants to see you.
7. Somebody told me about the accident.
8. Something went wrong.

Who broke the window? What happened?
Who? Who your umbrella? Who you angry?
Who me? Who you? Who?

42.2 Make questions with who and what. In these sentences who/what is the object.

1. I met somebody.
2. I'm doing something.
3. I'm reading something.
4. I saw somebody.
5. I want something.
6. I phoned somebody.
7. I'm going to cook something.
8. I bought something.

Who did you meet? What are you doing?
What you? Who?
Who? Who?
Who? What?
Who? What?

42.3 Make questions with who and what. Sometimes who/what is the subject, sometimes who/what is the object.

1. Somebody lives in that house.
2. Tom said something.
3. They have lost something.
4. Somebody cleaned the kitchen.
5. I asked somebody for money.
6. Somebody asked me for money.
7. Something happened last night.
9. Somebody telephoned me yesterday.
10. I telephoned somebody yesterday.
11. Somebody knows the answer.
12. Something woke me up this morning.
13. Somebody has got my pen.
15. Somebody saw the accident.
16. Somebody did the washing-up.
17. Jill did something.
18. This word means something.

Who lives in that house? What did Tom say?
Who you money? Who?
UNIT 43  Questions (3): Who is she talking to?  What is it like?

Julia is talking to someone

Who?

Who is Julia talking to?

Questions (Who ...? / What ...? / Where ...? / Which ...?) often end with a preposition (to/for/about/with etc.):
- 'I'm thinking.' 'What are you thinking about?'
- 'I'm afraid.' 'Why? What are you afraid of?'
- 'Where is your friend from?' 'She's from Germany.'
- 'Who does this book belong to?' 'It's mine.'
- 'Who did she go on holiday with?' 'With her parents.'
- 'What does he look like?' 'He's got a beard and wears glasses.'
- 'This book is very good.' 'Is it? What is it about?'
- 'Tom's father is in hospital.' 'Which hospital is he in?'

What (is/are/was/were) ... like?

'What is it like?' = Tell me something about it; is it good or bad, big or small, old or new? etc.
When we say 'What ... like?', like is a preposition. It is not the verb like (Do you like music? etc.).

- A: I went to the new restaurant last night.
  B: Oh, did you? What's it like? Good?
  A: Yes, excellent.

- A: What's your new teacher like?
  B: She's very good. We learn a lot.
  A: I met Linda's parents yesterday.
  B: Oh, what are they like?
  A: They're very friendly.

- A: What was the weather like when you were on holiday?
  B: Very nice.
43.1 Write questions.

1. I'm thinking about something.
   What are you thinking about? ?

2. He went out with somebody.
   Who did he go out with? ?

3. I'm waiting for somebody.
   Who are you waiting for? ?

4. She danced with somebody.
   Who did she dance with? ?

5. He's interested in something.
   What is he interested in? ?

6. I had dinner with somebody.
   Who did you have dinner with? ?

7. They're looking for something.
   What are they looking for? ?

8. George was with somebody.
   Who was George with? ?

9. I gave the money to somebody.
   Who did I give the money to? ?

10. I'm looking at something.
    What am I looking at? ?

11. They were talking about something.
    What were they talking about? ?

12. I dreamt about somebody.
    Who did I dream about? ?

13. He was afraid of something.
    What was he afraid of? ?

14. They're going to a restaurant.
    What restaurant are they going to? ?

15. She spoke to somebody.
    Who did she speak to? ?

16. I stayed at a hotel.
    Which hotel did you stay at? ?

43.2 You are talking to somebody from another country. You want some information about the country. Ask questions with **What is/are ... like?**

1. (the houses) What are the houses like? ?

2. (the food) What is the food like? ?

3. (the weather) What is the weather like? ?

4. (the people) What are the people like? ?

5. (your city) What is your city like? ?

6. (the shops) What are the shops like? ?

7. (the schools) What are the schools like? ?

8. (TV programmes) What are the TV programmes like? ?

43.3 Ask questions with **What was/were ... like?**

1. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.
   What was the weather like? ?

2. Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.
   What was the film like? ?

3. Your friend has just arrived at the airport. Ask about the flight.
   What was the flight like? ?

4. Your friend has just been to a concert. Ask about the concert.
   What was the concert like? ?

5. Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.
   What were the lessons like? ?

6. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.
   What was the hotel like? ?
UNIT 44  What ...?  Which ...?  How ...?

■ What ...?
What + noun (What colour ...? / What kind ...? etc.):
- What colour is your car?  What colour are your eyes?
- What size is this shirt?  What kind of job do you want?
- What make is your TV set?  What time is it?

What without a noun:
- What's your favourite colour?
- What do you want to do this evening?

What and Who  ►  Unit 42

■ Which ...?
Which + noun (things or people):
- Which train did you catch - the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- Which doctor did you see - Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

Which without a noun (not people):
- Which is bigger - Canada or Australia?
  but  Who is taller - Bill or Jerry? (Who for people)

Which one(s)  ►  Unit 69

■ What ...? and Which ...?
We say Which when we are thinking about a small number (perhaps two, three or four things):
- We can go this way or that way.  Which way shall we go?
- There are four umbrellas here.  Which is yours?

Use What in other situations:
- What is the capital of Italy?
- What sort of music do you like? (not 'Which sort ...?')

Compare:
- What colour are your eyes? (not 'Which colour ...?')
  but  Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow?

■ How ...?
- 'How was the party last night?' 'It was great!'
- 'How do you usually go to work?' 'By bus.'

How + adjective/adverb (how old / how big / how fast etc.):
- How old is your father? How tall are you? How big is the house?
- How far is it to the shops from here?
- How often do you go on holiday?
44.1 Write questions with Which.

1. He stayed at a hotel.
2. We're going to a restaurant.
3. She reads a newspaper.
4. I'm going to learn a language.
5. They visited many places.
6. I'm waiting for a bus.

Which hotel did he stay at? ........................................?
Which hotel did we go to? .........................................?
Which newspaper does she read? .................................?
Which language am I going to learn? ............................?
Which places did they visit? .......................................?
Which bus am I waiting for? ......................................?

44.2 Put in what/which/who.

1. What ...... is that man's name?
2. Which ...... way shall we go? This way or the other way?
3. You can have tea or coffee. ...................... do you want?
4. 'I can't find my umbrella,' ' ...................... colour is it?'
5. .................. is your favourite sport?
6. This is a very nice house. ...................... room is yours?
7. .................. is more expensive, meat or fish?
8. .................. is older, Ann or George?
9. .................. is your telephone number?
10. .................. kind of TV programmes do you like watching?
11. 'She's got three cars.' ...................... car does she use most?
12. .................. nationality are you? 'I'm Brazilian.'

44.3 Write questions with What ...? or How ...?

1. Are his eyes blue? Green? Brown? What colour are his eyes?
2. Did you get up at 7 o'clock? 7.30? 8.15?
3. Are you 20 years old? 21? 22?
4. Is the door red? Blue? Yellow?
5. Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?

6. Are these shoes size 37? 38? 39?
7. Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?

8. Is your room very big? Quite big? Not very big?
9. Do you like classical music? Rock? Folk music?

10. Can you run one kilometre? Five? Ten?
11. Is your pullover size 38? 40? 42?
12. Are you 1.75 metres? 1.80? 1.85?
13. Is it Monday? Tuesday? Wednesday?
14. Is this box one kilogram? One and a half? Two?
15. Can this plane fly at 500 miles an hour? 600? 700?

UNIT 45 How long does it take?

How long does it take by plane from London to Madrid?  It takes two hours.

I started reading the book two weeks ago. I finished it today.  It took me two weeks to read it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long does it take</th>
<th>by plane</th>
<th>by train</th>
<th>by car</th>
<th>from ... to ...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It takes</th>
<th>two hours</th>
<th>ten minutes</th>
<th>a long time</th>
<th>from ... to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?  It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- How long does it take by car from your house to the station?  It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>does</th>
<th>it take</th>
<th>(you)</th>
<th>(Ann)</th>
<th>(them)</th>
<th>to (do something)?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It</th>
<th>took</th>
<th>takes</th>
<th>will take</th>
<th>(me)</th>
<th>(Ann)</th>
<th>(them)</th>
<th>a week</th>
<th>a long time</th>
<th>three hours</th>
<th>to (do something).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- How long does it take to cross the Atlantic Ocean by ship?
- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- 'I came by train.' Did you? How long did it take?'
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It takes me 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.
- It took Tom an hour to do his shopping.
- It will take me an hour to cook the dinner.
- It doesn't take long to cook an omelette.
45.1 Write questions with **How long does it take ...?**

1 (by plane/London/Madrid) How long does it take by plane from London to Madrid? ?
2 (by car/Rome/Milan) ................................................................. ?
3 (by bus/the city centre/the airport) ................................................................. ?
4 (by plane/Cairo/London) ................................................................. ?
5 (by taxi/the station/the hotel) ................................................................. ?
6 (by train/Paris/Geneva) ................................................................. ?
7 (by boat/Dover/Ostend) ................................................................. ?
8 (by bicycle/your house/your work) ................................................................. ?

45.2 Look at the timetable of flights from London. How long does it take to get to each place? Write sentences with **it takes ...**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>from LONDON</th>
<th>depart</th>
<th>arrive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to EDINBURGH</td>
<td>07.10</td>
<td>08.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MANCHESTER</td>
<td>07.15</td>
<td>08.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEWCASTLE</td>
<td>07.30</td>
<td>08.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORK</td>
<td>11.15</td>
<td>12.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABERDEEN</td>
<td>09.25</td>
<td>10.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BELFAST</td>
<td>08.30</td>
<td>09.40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How long does it take to fly to:

1 Edinburgh? It takes an hour and ten minutes.
2 Manchester? It ................................................................. ?
3 Newcastle? ................................................................. ?
4 Cork? ................................................................. ?
5 Aberdeen? ................................................................. ?
6 Belfast? ................................................................. ?

45.3 Write questions with **How long did it take ...?**

1 She found a job. How long did it take her to find a job? ................................................................. ?
2 I walked to the station. ................................................................. you ................................................................. ?
3 They cleaned the house. ................................................................. ?
4 I learnt to swim. ................................................................. ?
5 He found an apartment. ................................................................. ?

45.4 Write sentences with **It took ...**

1 (he read the book/two weeks) It took him two weeks to read the book.
2 (we walked home/an hour) .................................................................
3 (I learnt to drive/a long time) .................................................................
4 (they repaired the car/all day) .................................................................
5 Write a true sentence about yourself: .................................................................

45.5 How long does it take (you) to do these things? Write full sentences.

1 (run five kilometres?) It takes me about 30 minutes to run five kilometres.
2 (have a shower?) .................................................................
3 (fly to London from your country?) .................................................................
4 (study to be a doctor in your country?) .................................................................
5 (walk from your house to the nearest shop?) .................................................................
**UNIT 46  Can you tell me where ...?  Do you know what ...? etc.**

![Image of two men with speech bubbles]

We say:  
Where **is** the station?  
but  
Can you tell me where the station **is**?  

*(not 'Can you tell me where is the station is?')  
also:  
I know  
I don't know  
Do you know  
I can't remember  
I wonder  
(etc.)  

| Who are those people? | but | who those people are where they've gone  
|-----------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------  
| Where have they gone? |     | how old **Tom** is  
| How old is **Tom**?   |     | what time the bus is  
| What time is the bus? |     | when **Ann** is going away (?)  
| When is **Ann** going away? |   | how much **this camera** is  
| How much is **this camera**? |   | why **they** were late  
| Why were they late? |     | what **he** was wearing  
| What was **he** wearing? |   |  

**Questions with do/does/did (present simple and past simple):**

| Where **does he live?**?  
|--------------------------|---|----------------------------------  
| Do you know where **he lives**? (not 'Do you know where does he live?') |

| How do aeroplanes fly? | but | how aeroplanes fly (?)  
|------------------------|-----|-------------------------  
| What does she want?    |     | what she wants  
| Why did she go home?   |     | why she went home  
| Where did I put the key? |   | where I put the key  

**Questions beginning Is ...?/Do ...?/Can ...? etc. (yes/no questions):**

| Is Jack at home? | but | Jack is at home  
|------------------|-----|------------------  
| Have they got a car? |     | they've got a car (?)  
| Can he help us? |     | he can help us  
| Does Ann smoke? |     | Ann smokes  
| Did anybody see you? |   | anybody saw me  

You can use **if or whether** in these sentences:  
- Do you know if she smokes?  
  or  
- Do you know **whether** she smokes?
46.1 You are a tourist. Ask *Excuse me, can you tell me where ...?*

1 (the station)  *Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is*  ...........................................  ?
2 (the museum)  *Excuse me, .................................................................*  ?
3 (the information centre)  .................................................................  ?
4 (the nearest bank)  ...........................................................................  ?

46.2 Answer these questions with *I don’t know where/when/why ... etc.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have they gone to London?</th>
<th>(where) I don’t know where they’ve gone.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is he in the garden?</td>
<td>(where) I don’t know where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are they leaving tomorrow?</td>
<td>(when) ....................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Was he angry because I was late?</td>
<td>(why) I don’t know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are they from Australia?</td>
<td>(where) I ................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the house very old?</td>
<td>(how old) ................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will he be here soon?</td>
<td>(when) ..................................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

46.3 Write sentences with *Do you know ...?/I don’t remember ... etc.*

1 (How do aeroplanes fly?)  *Do you know how aeroplanes fly*  ...........................................  ?
2 (Where does Susan work?)  *I don’t know*  ..............................................................  ?
3 (Where do they live?)     *Do you know*  ..............................................................  ?
4 (What did he say?)        *Do you remember*  ............................................................  ?
5 (What time does the concert begin?)  *Do you know*  ................................................  ?
6 (Why did they leave early?)  *I don’t know*  ............................................................  ?
7 (How did the accident happen?)  *I don’t remember*  ................................................  ?

46.4 Ask questions with *Do you know if (or whether) ...?*

1 (Have they got a car?)  *Do you know if they’ve got a car*  ...........................................  ?
2 (Are they married?)  *Do you know*  ..............................................................  ?
3 (Does she like her job?)  *Do you know*  ..............................................................  ?
4 (Will George be here tomorrow?)  *Do*  ...............................................................  ?
5 (Did he pass his examination?)  ...............................................................  ?

46.5 Write new questions beginning *Do you know ...?*

1 (What does she want?)  *Do you know what she wants*  ...........................................  ?
2 (Where is Ann?)  *Do you know where*  ..............................................................  ?
3 (Is Pat working today?)  *Do*  ...............................................................  ?
4 (What time do they start work?)  *Do*  ...............................................................  ?
5 (Do they work on Sundays?)  ...............................................................  ?
6 (Why were they so nervous?)  ...............................................................  ?
7 (Where did Stella go?)  ...............................................................  ?
8 (Are the shops open tomorrow?)  ...............................................................  ?
UNIT 47  to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

verbs + to ... (I want to do)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>want</th>
<th>decide</th>
<th>hope</th>
<th>try</th>
<th>+ to ... (to do/to work/to be etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>expect</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>promise</td>
<td>learn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- What do you **want** to do this evening?
- I **hope** to go to university next year.
- We have **decided to leave** tomorrow morning.
- You **forgot to switch** off the light when you went out.
- My brother is **learning to drive**.
- I **tried to work** but I was too tired.

verbs + -ing (I like doing)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>suggest</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>+ -ing (doing/working/being etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>mind</td>
<td>finish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I enjoy **dancing**. (*not* ‘enjoy to dance’)
- Do you **like** driving?
- I **hate** getting up in the morning.
- Ann **loves going** to the cinema.
- Has it **stopped raining**?
- Mary **suggested going** to the cinema.
- I don’t **mind being** alone.

**but:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>would like</th>
<th>would hate</th>
<th>would love</th>
<th>would prefer</th>
<th>+ to ... (to do/to work/to be etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Jan **would like to meet** you. (*not* ‘would like meeting’)
- I’d love to go to Australia. (I’d = I would)
- ‘Would you **like to sit down**?’ ‘No, I’d **prefer to stand**, thank you.’
- I wouldn’t **like to be** a teacher.

would like  ► Unit 30

verbs + to ... or -ing:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>start</th>
<th>continue</th>
<th>prefer</th>
<th>+ to ... (to do etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or -ing (doing etc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- It **started raining**. or It **started to rain**.
- I **prefer travelling** by car. or I **prefer to travel** by car.
  (but **would prefer to do** something)
UNIT 47 Exercises

47.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

1 I enjoy dancing. (dance).
2 Where do you want to go? (go)?
3 What have you decided (do)?
4 I learnt to swim when I was five years old.
5 I'm trying to work. Please stop to talk.
6 Have you finished to clean the kitchen?
7 I'm tired. I want to go to bed.
8 The weather was nice, so I suggested to go for a walk by the river.
9 Don't forget to send me a postcard when you're on holiday.
10 Where's Bill? He promised to be here on time.
11 Do you enjoy to read books?
12 I don't mind to travel by train but I prefer to fly.
13 We invited Jane to the party but she didn't want to come.
14 Goodbye. I hope to see you again soon.
15 You must stop to work so hard. It's bad for you.
16 They were very angry and refused to speak to me.
17 Where is Ann? I need to talk to her.
18 Why did you start to cry?
19 I enjoy to visit other countries.

47.2 Ask questions with Do you like ...?

1 I often get up early. Do you like getting up early?
2 I often write letters. Do you like writing letters?
3 I often travel by train. Do you like travelling by train?
4 I often visit museums. Do you like visiting museums?
5 I often eat in restaurants. Do you like eating in restaurants?

Do you like doing these things? Use I like/don't like/hate/don't mind ...

6 I don't mind getting up early. (or I like .../I don't like .../I hate ...)
7 I like writing letters.
8 I like travelling by train.
9 I like visiting museums.
10 I like eating in restaurants.

47.3 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

1 Pam would like to meet you.
2 Do you like driving? (drive)?
3 I like your house. Do you like living here?
4 What would you like to do this evening?
5 I'd love helping you but it's impossible.
6 I travel a lot. I love travelling.
7 My brother is a teacher but he doesn't like teaching very much.
8 This ring is very beautiful. I'd hate losing it.
9 Would you prefer to leave now or later?
10 He wasn't happy when he lost the game. He hates losing.
UNIT 48 I want you to .../I told you to ...

The woman wants to go.
The man doesn't want the woman to go.
He wants her to stay.

(I) want to ...
(I) want (somebody) to ...

We say I want (you) to ...:
- I want you to be happy. (not 'I want that you are happy'.)
- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.

We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to ...) with.

| verb      | I    | you          | to be    | careful.
|-----------|------|--------------|----------|----------
| tell      | told | you          | to be    | careful.
| ask       | asked| her friend   | to help  | her.
| advise    | asked| me           | to do?   | her.
| persuade  | advised| George      | to come  | with us.
| expect    | expected| you        | to be    | here.
| teach     | taught| my brother  | to swim. | here.    

I told (somebody) to .../I told (somebody) not to ...:

- Tom said (to Ann): 'Wait for me!'  
  → Tom told Ann to wait for him.

- Tom said (to Ann): 'Don't wait for me.'  
  → Tom told Ann not to wait for him.

make and let

After make and let we do not use to:
- He's very funny. He makes us laugh. (not 'makes us to laugh')
- I don't want you to go alone. Let me go with you. (not 'Let me to go')

Let's (do something)

You can say Let's ... (= let us) when you want people to do things with you:
- Come on! Let's dance!
- 'Shall we go out tonight?' 'No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home.'

help

You can say help somebody do or help somebody to do:
- Tom helped me carry the box.  or  Tom helped me to carry the box.
48.1 Write sentences beginning I (don’t) want you .../Do you want me ...?

1 (you must come with me)  I want you to come with me.
2 (shall I come with you?)  Do you want me to come with you?
3 (listen carefully)  I want
4 (please don’t be angry)  I don’t
5 (shall I wait for you?)  Do you
6 (don’t phone me tonight)  
7 (you must meet Sarah)  
8 (shall I make some coffee?)  

48.2 Write sentences with advised/persuaded/let etc.

1 (George came with us / we persuaded him)  We persuaded George to come with us.
2 (I stayed in bed / the doctor advised me)  The doctor
3 (she phoned me / I asked her)  I
4 (I went to the party / Tom persuaded me)  Tom
5 (I used their phone / they let me)  They
6 (Ann plays the piano / her mother taught her)  Ann’s

48.3 Write sentences with told.

1 Tom said to Ann: ‘Wait for me!’  Tom told Ann to wait for me.
2 I said to you: ‘Don’t wait for me.’  I told you not wait for me.
3 The man said to me: ‘Get into the car!’  The man told
4 I said to the children: ‘Be quiet.’  I
5 She said to me: ‘Don’t lose the key.’  She
6 Tom said to me: ‘Phone me later.’  
7 I said to Tom: ‘Don’t say anything.’  

48.4 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes to is necessary (to get/to arrive etc.) and sometimes to is not necessary (get/arrive etc.).

arrive clean cry do explain go get hear know sleep wait walk

1 Please stay with me. I don’t want you ...to go...
2 Kevin’s parents didn’t want him .......... married.
3 She didn’t understand the story, so she asked me ............... it to her.
4 Don’t wake me up tomorrow morning. Let me .........
5 Talk quietly. I don’t want anybody ........... us.
6 ‘Do you want to go by car?’ ‘No, let’s .............’
7 You’re here early. I expected you .............. later.
8 It was a very sad film. It made me .......... 
9 Please don’t tell Sarah about my plan. I don’t want her ..........
10 The kitchen is very dirty. Can you help me .......... it?
11 ‘Shall we begin?’ ‘No, let’s .............. a few minutes.’
12 What do you think about my problem? What do you advise me .......... ?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>New Form</th>
<th>Example (Subject)</th>
<th>Example (Object)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am/is</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>(she said) 'I'm working.' → She said that she was working.</td>
<td>(they said to us) 'The hotel isn't very good.' → They told us that the hotel wasn't very good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>(I said) 'The shops are open.' → I said that the shops were open.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have/has → had</td>
<td></td>
<td>(I said to him) 'I've finished my work.' → I told him that I had finished my work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>could</td>
<td>(Tom said) 'I can't come to the party.' → Tom said that he couldn't come to the party.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>would</td>
<td>(my friends said to me) 'The exam will be easy.' → My friends told me that the exam would be easy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do/does → did</td>
<td></td>
<td>(I said) 'It doesn't matter.' → I said that it didn't matter.</td>
<td>(he said) 'I don't know your address.' → He said that he didn't know my address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>liked</td>
<td>(Mary said) 'I like tomatoes.' → Mary said that she liked tomatoes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>(they said) 'We often go to the cinema.' → They said that they often went to the cinema.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **say** (→ said) and **tell** (→ told)**
  say something (to somebody): They said that ... (not ‘They said me that ...’)
tell somebody something: They told me that .../They told Ann that ...
  - He said that he was tired. (not ‘He said me that he was tired.’)
  - He told me that he was tired. (not ‘He told that he was tired.’)
  - What did he say to you? (not ‘say you’)
  - What did he tell you? (not ‘tell to you’)

- *'that' is not necessary in these sentences. You can say:*
  - He said that he was tired. or He said he was tired. (without ‘that’)
49.1 A is talking to B about other people. Finish A’s second sentence.

1 A: She likes you.
   A: Yes, she told me that .
   B: Does she? Are you sure?

2 A: He is married.
   A: Yes, he told me that he
   B: Is he? Are you sure?

3 A: She can play tennis.
   A: Yes, she said that
   B: Can she? Are you sure?

4 A: They are from Italy.
   A: Yes, they told me that
   B: Are they? Are you sure?

5 A: She has got a job.
   A: Yes, she told me that
   B: Has she? Are you sure?

6 A: They will help us.
   A: Yes, they said that
   B: Will they? Are you sure?

7 A: He is going to India.
   A: Yes, he said that
   B: Is he? Are you sure?

8 A: She works in a bank.
   A: Yes, she told me that
   B: Does she? Are you sure?

9 A: They live in London.
   A: Yes, they told me that
   B: Do they? Are you sure?

10 A: She is studying art.
    A: Yes, she said that
    B: Is she? Are you sure?

49.2 Read what these people say and then write sentences with She/He said that ...

1 I’m tired
   He said that he was tired.

2 I’ll phone later.
   She said that she

3 I don’t want to study.
   He said

4 I haven’t been to London.
   He

5 I’ve lost my key.

6 I’m learning German.

7 I can’t drive a car.

8 I know the answer.

9 I’m not going out.

10 I’ve got a lot of problems.

49.3 Put in say/said or tell/told.

1 She said that she was tired.
2 He told me that he was tired.
3 I told her that it was important.
4 Jack said me you were ill.
5 She said she didn’t like Peter.

6 Did Lucy that she would be late?
7 I didn’t the police anything.
8 The man us he was a reporter.
9 He he was a reporter.
10 Did they you their names?
Ann didn’t have any bread.  
But she wanted some bread.  
So she went to the shop.  

Why did she go to the shop?  
**To buy** some bread.  

She went to the shop **to buy** some bread.

■ **to ...** (to do/to buy/to see etc.) tells us why a person does something (the purpose):  
  - ‘Why are you going out?’  ‘**To buy** a newspaper.’  
  - George went to the station to **meet** his friend. 
  - She turned on the TV to **watch** the news.  
  - I’d like to go to Spain to **learn** Spanish.

**money/time to (do something):**  
  - We need some **money** to **buy** food.  
  - I haven’t got **time** to **watch** television.

■ **to ...** and for ....

to + verb: **to buy/to have/to see** etc.  
for + noun: for some bread/for dinner/for a holiday etc.  
  - She went to the shop **to buy** some bread. (to + verb)  
  - She went to the shop **for some bread.** (for + noun)  
  - They are going to Scotland to **see** their grandmother. *(not ‘for to see’)*  
  - They are going to Scotland **for a holiday.**  
  - We need some money **to buy** food. *(not ‘for buy’)*  
  - We need some money **for food.**

■ **wait**

wait for somebody/something:  
  - Are you **waiting for the bus**?  
  - Please wait for **me**.

wait for somebody/something **to ...**:  
  - I can’t go out yet. I’m **waiting for John to phone.**  
  - I was having dinner when they arrived. They **waited for me to finish** my meal.
50.1 Write sentences with **I went to the ... to ...** Choose from:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>get some medicine</th>
<th>meet a friend</th>
<th>catch a train</th>
<th>buy some food</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get some stamps</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 (the station) .................................................................
2 (the bank) .................................................................
3 (the supermarket) ............................................................
4 (the post office) ............................................................
5 (the chemist) .................................................................
6 (the cafe) .................................................................

50.2 Finish the sentences with the best ending. Choose from:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to open this door</th>
<th>to let some fresh air into the room</th>
<th>to wake them up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to watch the news</td>
<td>to tell him about the party</td>
<td>to get some petrol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to see the Pyramids</td>
<td>to read the newspaper</td>
<td>to clean it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I turned on the television .................................................................
2 She sat down in an armchair .................................................................
3 Do I need a key ? .................................................................
4 The house is dirty but they don't have time .................................................................
5 She opened the window .................................................................
6 I knocked on their bedroom door .................................................................
7 We stopped at a petrol station .................................................................
8 A lot of people go to Egypt .................................................................
9 I phoned Tom .................................................................
10 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window .................................................................

50.3 Put in **to** or **for**.

1 She went to the shop ................. to buy some bread.
2 We stopped at a petrol station ................. some petrol.
3 I'm going to walk home. I haven't got any money ................. a taxi.
4 We went to a restaurant ................. have dinner.
5 He wants to go to university ................. study economics.
6 I'm going to London ................. an interview next week.
7 I'm going to London ................. visit a friend of mine.
8 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time ................. wash.
9 Everybody needs money ................. live.
10 The office is very small. There's space only ................. a table and a chair.

50.4 Finish these sentences. Use the words in brackets (**()`**).

1 I can't go out yet. I'm waiting for John to phone. ................. (John/phone).
2 We're not going out yet. We're waiting ................. (the rain/stop).
3 We called the police and then we waited ................. (them/come).
4 I sat down in the cinema and waited ................. (the film/begin).
UNIT 51 get

- get something/somebody = receive/buy/fetch/find

- Did you get my letter last week? (= receive)
- I like your pullover. Where did you get it? (= buy)
- (on the phone) 'Hello, can I speak to Ann, please?' One moment. I'll get her. (= fetch)
- Is it difficult to get a job in your country? (= find)

- get cold/hungry/tired/better etc. (get + adjective) = become

- Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- If you don't eat, you get hungry.
- I'm sorry he's ill. I hope he gets better soon.

also: get married and get lost:
- Linda and Frank are getting married next month.
- I went for a walk and got lost. (= I lost my way)

- get to a place (get to work/get to London/get home etc.) = arrive
- I usually get to work before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
- We went to Oxford yesterday. We left London at 8.00 and got to Oxford at 9.00.
- Can you tell me how to get to the city centre?

but get home (not 'get to home'):
- What time did you get home last night?

- get in/out/on/off
get in (a car)
got in the car and drove away. (you can also say 'got into the car')
got out (of a car)
got out of the car
get on (a bus, a train, a plane)
got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Cross Street.
51.1 Finish these sentences. Use get(s) + the best ending.

our shoes  my letter  some milk  a ticket  a doctor  the job
some petrol  a very good salary

1 I wrote to you last week. Did you get my letter ..........................................................
2 We stopped at the petrol station to ..........................................................?
3 Quick! This man is ill. We must ..........................................................? They're very nice.
4 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can ..........................................................
5 I had an interview with the manager but I didn't ..........................................................
7 When you go to the shop, can you ..........................................................?
8 She's got a good job. She ..........................................................

51.2 Complete these sentences. Use getting + one of these words:

dark  late  cold  ready  married

1 Drink your coffee. It's getting cold ..........................................................
2 It's .......................................................... It's time to go home.
3 'I'm .......................................................... next week.' 'Oh, are you? Congratulations!'
4 'Where's Sally?' 'She's in her room. She's .......................................................... to go out.'
5 Turn on the light. It's ..........................................................

51.3 Complete the sentences. Use get/got + one of these words:
tired  old  hungry  married  better  wet  lost

1 If you don't eat, you get hungry ..........................................................
2 If you work very hard, you ..........................................................
3 Don't go out in the rain. You'll ..........................................................
4 My brother .......................................................... last month. His wife's name is Julia.
5 We didn't know the way home, so we ..........................................................
6 Everybody wants to stay young, but we all ..........................................................
7 The beginning of the film wasn't very good but it ..........................................................

51.4 Write sentences with I left ... and got to ...

1 (home/7.30 → work/8.15) I left home at 7.30 and got to work at 8.15.
2 (London/10.15 → Bristol/11.45) I left London at 10.15 and ..........................................................
3 (home/8.30 → the airport/9.30) I left home ..........................................................
4 (the party/11.15 → home/midnight) I ..........................................................

51.5 Put in got + in/out (of)/on/off.

1 She ...got in... the car and drove away.
2 I .......................................................... the bus and walked to my house from the bus-stop.
3 She .......................................................... the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
4 I made a stupid mistake. I .......................................................... the wrong train.
go to ... (go to London/go to work/go to a concert etc.)
- I'm going to France next week.
- What time do you usually go to work?
- Tom didn't want to go to the concert.
- I went to the dentist on Friday.
- What time did you go to bed last night?

also: go to sleep (= start to sleep):
- I went to bed and went to sleep very quickly.

go home (without to):
- I'm going home now. (not 'going to home')

go on holiday/a trip/an excursion/a cruise
- We go on holiday (to Scotland) every year.
- When we were on holiday, we went on a lot of excursions to different places.
- Schoolchildren often go away on school trips.

go for a walk/a run/a swim/a drink/a meal/a holiday
- The sea looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
- Last night we went out for a meal. The restaurant was very good.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's gone for a walk in the park.'
- They've gone to Scotland for a holiday.
  (We say 'on holiday' but 'for a holiday')

go swimming/go shopping etc.

We use go -ing for sporting activities (go swimming/go skiing/go jogging/go fishing etc.) and also shopping (go shopping):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I go</th>
<th>shopping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he is going</td>
<td>swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we went</td>
<td>fishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they have gone</td>
<td>sailing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she wants to go</td>
<td>skiing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We live near the mountains. In winter we go skiing every weekend.
- She has a small boat and she often goes sailing.
- Are you going shopping this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's go swimming. (or Let's go for a swim.)
- George went fishing last Sunday. He caught a lot of fish.
UNIT 52  Exercises

52.1 Put in to/on/for where necessary.

1 I'm going ......... to ......... France next week.
2 She has a small boat, so she often goes ..... sailing. (no preposition)
3 Sue went ......... New York last year.
4 Would you like to go ......... the cinema this evening?
5 Jack goes ......... jogging every morning before breakfast.
6 I'm going out ......... a walk. Do you want to come?
7 I'm tired because I went ......... a party last night and went ......... bed very late.
8 They're going ......... holiday ......... Italy next week.
9 The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went ......... a swim.
10 Excuse me, I must go ......... the toilet.
11 It's late. I must go ......... home now.
12 I need some stamps, so I'm going ......... the post office.
13 One day, I'd like to go ......... a trip round the world.
14 She isn't feeling well, so she's gone ......... the doctor.

52.2 What did these people do yesterday afternoon? Look at the pictures and write a sentence with went -ing.

1 George went sailing.
2 Diane
3
4
5
6

52.3 Use the words in the list to finish these sentences. Use to/on/for if necessary.

home  shopping  a-swim  Portugal  riding  holiday  the bank
sleep  fishing  a walk

1 The sea looks nice. Let's go ......... a swim.
2 George went ......... and caught a lot of fish.
3 I went ......... in the cinema because the film was very boring.
4 'Is Ann at home?' 'No, she's gone ......... to get some money.'
5 He has three horses. He often goes .........
6 The weather is nice. Shall we go ......... in the park?
7 I'm going ......... . I have to buy a lot of things.
8 It's late and I'm tired. I'm going ......... . Goodnight.
9 'Are you going ......... soon?' 'Yes, next month. We're going ......... .'
UNIT 53  I/me  he/him  they/them etc.

- **people**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I like Ann.</td>
<td>Ann likes me. me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We like Ann.</td>
<td>Ann likes us. us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You like Ann.</td>
<td>Ann likes you. you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He likes Ann.</td>
<td>Ann likes him. him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She likes Ann.</td>
<td>Ann likes her. her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They like Ann.</td>
<td>Ann likes them. them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use me/him/her etc. (object) after prepositions (for/to/at/with etc.):
- This letter isn't for you. It's for me.
- Where's Alan? I want to talk to him.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?
- They are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?

- **things**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I want that book. Please give it to me.
- I want those books. Please give them to me.
- Diane never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- I never go to parties. I don't like them.
- 'Where's the newspaper?' 'You're sitting on it.'
UNIT 53  Exercises

53.1 Finish the sentences with him/her/them.

1 I don't know those girls. Do you know ..........them .......... ?
2 I don't know that man. Do you know ......................... ?
3 I don't know those people. Do you know ......................... ?
4 I don't know Fred's wife. Do you know ......................... ?
5 I don't know his friends. Do you know ......................... ?
6 I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know ......................... ?
7 I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know ......................... ?
8 I don't know those students. Do you know ......................... ?

53.2 Finish the sentences. Use I/me/we/us/you/he/him/she/her/they/them.

1 I want to see her but ..........she .......... doesn't want to see ..........me .......... .

2 I want to see him but ......................... doesn't want to see .........................
3 They want to see me but ......................... don't want to see .........................
4 We want to see them but ......................... don't want to see .........................
5 She wants to see him but ......................... doesn't want to see .........................
6 They want to see her but ......................... doesn't want to see .........................
7 I want to see them but ......................... don't want to see .........................
8 He wants to see us but ......................... don't want to see .........................
9 You want to see her but ......................... doesn't want to see .........................

53.3 Finish the sentences. Use me/us/him/her/it/them.

1 Who is that woman? Why are you looking at ..........her .......... ?
2 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I work with .........................'
3 I'm talking to you. Please listen to .........................
4 These photographs are nice. Do you want to look at ......................... ?
5 I like that camera. I'm going to buy .........................
6 Where are the tickets? I can't find .........................
7 We're going out. You can come with .........................
8 I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of .........................
9 Where is she? I want to talk to .........................
10 Those apples are bad. Don't eat .........................

53.4 Put in it/them + me/us/him/her/them.

1 I want those books. Please give ..........them .......... to ..........me .......... .
2 He wants the key. Please give ......................... to .........................
3 She wants the keys. Please give ......................... to .........................
4 I want the letter. Please give ......................... to .........................
5 They want the money. Please give ......................... to .........................
6 We want the photographs. Please give ......................... to .........................
UNIT 54  my/his/their etc.

I → my  I like my job.
we → our  We like our jobs.
you → your  You like your job.
he → his  He likes his job.
she → her  She likes her job.
they → their  They like their jobs.
it → its  Oxford (= it) is famous for its university.

We use my/your/his/her etc. + a noun:
my hands  his mother  her new car
our house  your best friend  their room

his/her/their:

Ann  (her)

George  (his)

Mr and Mrs Thomson  (their)

her car  (= Ann’s car)
her husband  (= Ann’s husband)
her children  (= Ann’s children)

his bicycle
his sister
his parents

their son
their daughter
their children

its and it’s:
its  Oxford is famous for its university.
it’s (= it is)  I like Oxford. It’s a nice city. (= It is nice.)
UNIT 54 Exercises

54.1 Finish these sentences.

1 He ........................................... parents.
2 They live with ................................ parents.
3 We ........................................... parents.
4 Ann lives ...........................................

54.2 Finish these sentences.

1 I’m going to wash my hands ...........................................
2 She’s going to wash ...........................................
3 We’re going to ...........................................

54.3 Look at the family tree and finish the sentences.

1 I saw Liz with ........................................... husband, Philip.
2 I saw Ann and Ted with ........................................... children.
3 I saw Ted with ........................................... wife, Ann.
4 I saw George with ........................................... brother, Bill.
5 I saw Ann with ........................................... brother, Bill.
6 I saw Liz and Philip with ........................................... son, Bill.
7 I saw Ann with ........................................... parents.
8 I saw Diana and Robert with ........................................... parents.

54.4 Put in my/our/your/his/her/their/its.

1 I like ........................................... job.
2 Do you like ........................................... job?
3 Does your father like ........................................... job?
4 Sally is married. ........................................... husband works in a bank.
5 I know Mr Watson but I don’t know ........................................... wife.
6 Put on ........................................... coat when you go out. It’s very cold.
7 ........................................... favourite sport is tennis. I play a lot in summer.
8 My sister plays tennis too but ........................................... favourite sport is athletics.
9 We’re staying at a very nice hotel. ........................................... room is very comfortable.
10 Mr and Mrs Baker live in London but ........................................... son lives in Australia.
11 Thank you for ........................................... letter. It was good to hear from you again.
12 We are going to invite all ........................................... friends to the party.
13 John is a teacher but ........................................... sister is a nurse.
14 Do you think that most people are happy in ........................................... jobs?
15 I gave the money to my mother and she put it in ........................................... bag.
16 I often see that man but I don’t know ........................................... name.
17 They’ve got two children but I don’t remember ........................................... names.
18 The company has offices in many places but ........................................... head office is in New York.
UNIT 55 Whose is this? It's mine.

mine ours yours his hers theirs

I → my → mine
we → our → ours
you → your → yours
he → his → his
she → her → hers
they → their → theirs

It's my money. It's mine.
It's our money. It's ours.
It's your money. It's yours.
It's his money. It's his.
It's her money. It's hers.
It's their money. It's theirs.

- My hands are cold.
- Is this your book?
- Ann gave me her umbrella.
- It's their problem, not our problem.

- These books are mine but this newspaper is yours. (= your newspaper)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Ann gave me hers. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not ours. (= our problem)
- 'Is that their car?' 'No, theirs is green.' (= their car)

- Is this his camera?
- It's a nice camera. Is it his?

- We say: a friend of mine/a friend of his/some friends of yours etc.:
- I went out to meet a friend of mine. (not 'a friend of me')
- Are those people friends of yours? (not 'friends of you')

- Whose ...?

You can use whose with or without a noun:
- Whose money is this? (Whose is this?)
  It's mine.
- Whose shoes are these? (Whose are these?)
  They're John's.
UNIT 55  Exercises

55.1 Finish the sentences with mine/yours etc.
1 It's your money. It's yours. .......................... 5 It's their house. ........................................
2 It's my bag. It's ........................................... 6 They're your books. ....................................
3 It's our car. It's ...................................... 7 They're my glasses. .................................
4 They’re her shoes. They’re ............................. 8 It's his coat. ............................................

55.2 Choose the right word.
1 Is this your/your book? (your is right)
2 It's their/their problem, not our/our. (their and ours are right)
3 Are these your/yours shoes?
4 Is this camera your/yours?
5 That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is yellow.
6 They know our/ours address but we don’t know their/their.
7 They’ve got two children but I don’t know their/their names.
8 My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers, but her/hers is nicer.

55.3 Finish these sentences with ... friend(s) of mine/yours etc.
1 I went to the cinema with a friend of mine.
2 They went on holiday with some friends of theirs.
3 She's going out with a friend ...
4 We had dinner with some ... ...
5 I played tennis with a ... ...
6 He's going to meet a ... ...
7 Do you know that man? Is he a ... ...

55.4 Look at the pictures. Write questions with Whose ... ?

1 Whose book is this ................................. ?
2 Whose ................................................. ?
3 ........................................................ ?
4 ........................................................ ?
5 ........................................................ ?
6 ........................................................ ?
7 ........................................................ ?
8 ........................................................ ?
9 ........................................................ ?
10 ....................................................... ?
11 ........................................................ ?
12 ........................................................ ?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I etc.</th>
<th>me etc.</th>
<th>my etc.</th>
<th>mine etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows me.</td>
<td>It's my car.</td>
<td>It's mine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows us.</td>
<td>It's our car.</td>
<td>It's ours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows you.</td>
<td>It's your car.</td>
<td>It's yours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows him.</td>
<td>It's his car.</td>
<td>It's his.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows her.</td>
<td>It's her car.</td>
<td>It's hers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows them.</td>
<td>It's their car.</td>
<td>It's theirs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.'
- She was very happy because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
- 'Where are the children? Have you seen them?' 'Yes, they are playing with their friends in the garden.'
- That pen is mine. Can you give it to me, please?
- 'Is this your umbrella?' 'No, it's yours.'
- He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave him hers. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I gave him my address and he gave me his. (= he gave his address to me)
56.1 Finish the sentences in the same way.

1. Do you know that man?
   Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.

2. Do you know that woman?
   Yes, I know but I can't remember

3. Do you know these people?
   Yes, I but I names.

56.2 Finish these sentences in the same way.

1. We invited her to stay with us at our house.
2. He invited us to stay with ________________________________ house.
3. They invited me to stay with ________________________________ house.
4. I invited her to stay ________________________________
5. We invited them to ________________________________
6. You invited him ________________________________
7. She invited me ________________________________

56.3 Finish the sentences.

1. It's hers. Give it to her.
2. They're mine. Give them to me.
3. It's his. Give it ________________________________
4. They're hers. Give them ________________________________
5. It's ours. Give ________________________________
6. It's theirs. Give ________________________________
7. They're his. Give ________________________________
8. It's mine. Give ________________________________

56.4 Finish the sentences in the same way.

1. I gave him my address and he gave me his.
2. I gave her address and she gave me ________________________________
3. He gave me address and I gave ________________________________
4. We gave her address and she gave ________________________________
5. I gave them address and they ________________________________
6. She gave us address and ________________________________
7. You gave him address and ________________________________
8. We gave them address and ________________________________
9. They gave you address and ________________________________
10. She gave him address and ________________________________
UNIT 57  myself/yourself/himself etc.

Jack is looking at Tom.
↓
He is looking at him.

Tom is looking in the mirror.
↓
He is looking at himself.

He is looking at him  different people

He is looking at himself  the same person

I → me → myself  I looked at myself.
he → him → himself  He looked at himself.
she → her → herself  She looked at herself.
you → you → yourself  You looked at yourself. (one person)
yourselfes  You looked at yourselves. (two or more people)
we → us → ourselves  We looked at ourselves.
they → them → themselves  They looked at themselves.

- I cut myself with a knife. (not ‘I cut me’)
- She fell off her bicycle but she didn’t hurt herself.
- Do you sometimes talk to yourself when you are alone?
- If you want some more food, help yourselves.
- Did they pay for themselves or did you pay for them?
- ‘Did you all have a nice time?’ ‘Yes, we enjoyed ourselves.’

- by myself/by yourself etc. = alone
- I went on holiday by myself. (= I went on holiday alone.)
- She wasn’t with her friends. She was by herself.

- selves and each other
- I looked at myself and Tom looked at himself.
  = We looked at ourselves (in the mirror).
  but I looked at Tom and he looked at me.
  = We looked at each other.

- Jill and Ann are good friends. They know each other very well.
  (= Jill knows Ann and Ann knows Jill.)
- Paul and I live near each other.
  (= Paul lives near me and I live near him.)

We looked at ourselves.

We looked at each other.
57.1 Finish the sentences with *myself/yourselves* etc.

1 He enjoyed ..........................................
2 I enjoyed ..........................................
3 She enjoyed ..........................................
4 We enjoyed ..........................................
5 Did you enjoy ...........................................
6 Bill and I enjoyed ..........................................
7 The children enjoyed ..........................................
8 Jack didn’t enjoy ..........................................

57.2 Finish the sentences with *myself/yourselves* etc.

1 I cut ............................................. with a knife.
2 Be careful! That plate is very hot. Don’t burn ..........................................
3 I’m not angry with you. I’m angry with ..........................................
4 They never think about other people. They only think about ..........................................
5 I got out of the bath and dried ............................................. with a towel.
6 When people are alone, they often talk to ..........................................
7 The police say that the woman shot ............................................. with a gun.
8 Don’t pay for me. I want to pay for ..........................................
9 He fell off the ladder but he didn’t hurt ..........................................
10 I’d like to know more about you. Tell me about ...........................................
11 Goodbye! Have a good holiday and look after ........................................! (two people)

57.3 Make sentences with *myself/yourselves* etc.

1 I went on holiday alone. ........................................... I went on holiday by myself.
2 John lives alone. ...........................................
3 Do you live alone? ...........................................
4 She went to the cinema alone. ...........................................
5 When I saw him, he was alone. ...........................................
6 Don’t go out alone. ...........................................
7 I had dinner alone. ...........................................

57.4 Finish the sentences. Use *each other*.

1 I looked at Bill and Bill looked at me. Bill and I looked at each other.
2 I know him and he knows me. We .............................................
3 She likes him and he likes her. They ..........................................
4 You can help me and I can help you. We can ..........................................
5 He understands her and she understands him. They ..........................................
6 He gives her presents and she gives him presents. They ..........................................
7 Tom didn’t see Jill and Jill didn’t see Tom. Tom and Jill ..........................................
8 I didn’t speak to her and she didn’t speak to me. We ..........................................
9 She often writes letters to him and he often writes letters to her. ...........................................
UNIT 58  -‘s (Ann’s camera/my brother’s car etc.)

Ann’s camera (her camera)  my brother’s car (his car)  the manager’s office (his or her office)

We normally use -‘s (not of ...) for people:
- I stayed at my sister’s house. (not ‘the house of my sister’)
- Have you met Mr Kelly’s wife? (not ‘the wife of Mr Kelly’)
- Are you going to James’s party?
- Ann is a girl’s name.

You can use -‘s without a noun:
- Mary’s hair is longer than Ann’s. (= Ann’s hair)
- ‘Whose umbrella is this?’ ‘It’s my mother’s.’ (= my mother’s umbrella)
- ‘Where were you last night?’ ‘At John’s.’ (= John’s house)

friend’s and friends’

my friend’s house = one friend (= his house or her house)  my friends’ house = two or more friends (= their house)

We write -‘s after friend/student/mother etc. (singular):
my mother’s car (one mother)  my father’s car (one father)

We write -’ after friends/students/parents etc. (plural):
my parents’ car (two parents)

We use of ... (not usually -‘s) for things, places etc.:
the roof of the building  (not ‘the building’s roof’)
the beginning of the film  (not ‘the film’s beginning’)
the time of the next train  the name of this town
the capital of Spain  the cause of the problem
the meaning of this word  the back of the car
UNIT 58  Exercises

58.1 Look at the family tree and finish the sentences. Use -'s.

Liz and Philip are married.  They have two children, Charles and Ann.  Ann is married to Ted.  Ann and Ted have a son, Robert.

1 Philip is Liz's husband.
2 Liz is wife.
3 Charles is brother.
4 Charles is uncle.
5 Ann is wife.
6 Liz is grandmother.
7 Ann is sister.
8 Ted is husband.
9 Ted is father.
10 Robert is nephew.

58.2 Look at the big picture and then answer the questions.

1 Whose is this? Jane's
2 Whose are these? Jane's
3 Whose are these? Jane's
4 Whose is this? Jane's
5 Whose is this? Jane's
6 Whose are these? Jane's
7 Whose is this? Jane's
8 Whose are these? Jane's
9 Whose are these? Jane's
10 Whose is this? Jane's

58.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need -'s, sometimes of ...

1 I like Ann's camera. (the camera/Ann)
2 What is the name of this town? (the name/this town)
3 When is your sister's birthday? (the birthday/your sister)
4 Do you like Jill's colour? (the colour/this coat)
5 Write your name at the address. (the address/Jill)
6 What is the top of the page? (the top/the page)
7 What was the cause of the accident? (the cause/the accident)
8 The house is near the city centre. (the house/my parents)
9 Maria's spoken English is very good. (the spoken English/Maria)
10 For me the morning is very interesting. (the best part/the day)
11 The job is very interesting. (the job/my brother)
12 The car stopped at the end of the street. (the end/the street)
13 The car stopped at the end of the street. (the favourite colour/Pat)
14 The walls are very thin. (the walls/this house)
UNIT 59  a/an

He’s got a camera.  She’s waiting for a bus.  It’s a nice day.

■ a = ‘one’. Don’t forget a:
  - Do you want a cup of tea? (not ‘Do you want cup of tea?’)
  - Alice works in a bank. (not ‘in bank’)
  - I want to ask a question. (not ‘ask question’)
  - When I was a child, I liked reading stories.
  - Birmingham is a large city in central England.

■ an (not a) before a/e/i/o/u:
  - They live in an old house. (not ‘a old house.’)
  - A mouse is an animal. It’s a small animal.
  - Can you give me an example, please?
  - This is an interesting book.
  - I bought a hat and an umbrella.

also an hour (h is not pronounced: an (h) our)
but a university a European country
(these words are pronounced ‘yuniversity’, ‘yuropean’)

■ We use a/an for jobs etc.:
  - ‘What’s your job?’
    ‘I’m a dentist.’ (not ‘I’m dentist.’)
  - ‘What does she do?’ ‘She’s an engineer.’
  - Would you like to be a teacher?
  - Beethoven was a composer.
  - Picasso was a famous painter.
  - Are you a student?

■ another (an + other) is one word (not ‘an other’):
  - Can I have another cup of coffee?
  - Open another window. It’s very hot.
59.1 Write a or an.
1. a ............ book
2. an ........... old book
3. ........... window
4. ........... horse
5. ........... airport
6. ........... university
7. ........... organisation
8. ........... restaurant
9. ........... Chinese restaurant
10. ........... Indian restaurant
11. ........... accident
12. ........... bad accident
13. ........... question
14. ........... important question
15. ........... hamburger
16. ........... hour
17. ........... economic problem
18. ........... nice evening

59.2 What are these things? Choose your answer from the list and write a sentence.

animal bird flower fruit musical instrument planet river tool game vegetable

1 a duck? It's a bird. 6 a hammer? It
2 the Nile? It 7 a carrot? It
3 a rabbit? It 8 Mars? It
4 tennis? It 9 a trumpet? It
5 a rose? It 10 a pear? It

59.3 What are their jobs? Look at the pictures and finish the sentences. The jobs are: nurse/photographer/private detective/dentist/taxi-driver/road-sweeper/shop assistant.

1 She's a dentist. 5 She
2 He's 6 He
3 He 7 She
4 She 8 And you? I'm

59.4 Write sentences from the words in brackets ( ). Write a or an where necessary.

1 (I bought newspaper) I bought a newspaper.
2 (we went to party last night) We went
3 (my brother is artist) ............... 
4 (it's beautiful day today) ............... 
5 (I ate sandwich and apple) ............... 
6 (Britain is industrial country) ............... 
7 (I had bath this morning) ............... 
8 (Barbara works in office) ............... 
9 (it's very difficult question) ............... 
10 (we stayed at expensive hotel) ............... 

Unit 60  

flower/flowers (singular and plural)

■ The plural of a noun is usually -s:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular (= one)</th>
<th>plural (= two or more)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a flower →</td>
<td>some flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a week →</td>
<td>six weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a baby →</td>
<td>two babies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a nice place →</td>
<td>many nice places</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[\text{a flower} \quad \text{some flowers}\]

**Spelling of plural endings**  
*Appendix 4 (4.1 and 4.2):*

- **-es after** -s/-sh/-ch/-x:
  - bus → buses  
  - dish → dishes  
  - church → churches  
  - box → boxes  
  *also:* potato → potatoes  
  - tomato → tomatoes

- **-y → -ies:**
  - baby → babies  
  - party → parties  
  - dictionary → dictionaries

  *but:* -ay → -ays/-ey → -eys/-oy → -oys/-uy → -uys

  - day → days  
  - monkey → monkeys  
  - boy → boys  
  - guy → guys

- **-f/-fe → -ves:**
  - shelf → shelves  
  - knife → knives  
  - wife → wives

■ These things are plural in English:

- scissors  
- glasses  
- trousers  
- jeans  
- shorts  
- pyjamas  
- tights

- Do you wear **glasses**?
- I need the **scissors**. Where are they?

You can also say a **pair of** ... with these words:

- a pair of scissors  
- a pair of jeans  
- a pair of tights

- I need a new **pair of jeans**. *or* I need **some new jeans**. *(but not 'a new jeans')*

■ Some plurals do not end in -s:

| a man → two men | a woman → some women |
| a child → many children |
| one foot → two feet | a tooth → all my teeth |
| a mouse → some mice |
| a sheep → two sheep | a fish → many fish |

*also:* a **person** → two **people**/some **people**/many **people** etc.

- She's a **nice person**. *but* They are **nice people**. *(not 'nice persons')*

- Some **people** are very stupid. *(not 'Some people is')*

**Police** is a plural word:

- The **police** are coming. *(not 'The police is coming.')*
60.1 Write the plural.
1 flower ........................................... flowers
2 man ............................................. men
3 boat ............................................. boats
4 language ..................................... languages
5 watch .......................................... watches
6 country ....................................... countries
7 knife ........................................... knives
8 woman ......................................... women
9 address ........................................
10 sheep ......................................... sheep
11 tooth .......................................... teeth
12 leaf ............................................ leaves
13 child .......................................... children
14 foot ............................................. feet
15 umbrella ..................................... umbrellas
16 person ........................................
17 family ......................................... families
18 holiday ........................................
19 sandwich ......................................
20 city ............................................. cities
21 mouse ......................................... mice

60.2 Put in is or are.
1 Is the shop open?  6 Where my camera?
2 Are the shops open? 7 Where my glasses?
3 My hands cold. 8 Where the children?
4 My nose cold. 9 Your coat dirty.
5 My feet cold. 10 Your jeans dirty.
11 Who those men?
12 Who that woman?
13 Who those people?
14 Mice small animals.
15 Where the scissors?

60.3 Some of these sentences are right and some are wrong. Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write 'okay' if the sentence is right.

1 She's a very nice person. okay
2 I need a new jeans. I need a new pair of jeans, or I need some new jeans.
3 I've got two brother and four sister.
4 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.
5 There are a lot of sheep in that field.
6 Do you make many mistake when you speak English?
7 She's married and she has three childs.
8 Most of my friend are students.
9 He put on his pyjama and went to bed.
10 We went fishing but we didn't catch many fish.
11 There were three persons in the car, two women and a man.
12 I like your trouser. Where did you get it?
13 The town centre is usually full of tourist.
14 This scissor isn't very sharp.

60.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1 It's a nice place. Many people go there for a holiday. (go or goes?)
2 Some people is always late. (is or are?)
3 The president is not popular. The people like him. (don't or doesn't?)
4 A lot of people watch television every day. (watch or watches?)
5 Three people were killed in the accident. (was or were?)
6 How many people live in that house? (live or lives?)
7 Do the police carry guns in your country? (Do or Does?)
8 The police are looking for the stolen car. (is or are?)
9 I need my glasses, but I can't find them. (it or them?)
10 I'm going to buy some new trousers today. (a or some?)
UNIT 61  a car/some money (countable/uncountable 1

A noun can be countable or uncountable.

**Countable nouns**

For example:

(a) car (a) hat (a) flower (a) man (a) house (a) party (an) idea

You can use one/two/three ... + countable nouns (you can count them):

one car  two cars  three men  four houses

Countable nouns can be singular (= one) or plural (= two or more):

- singular: a car  my car  the car etc.
- plural: cars  two cars  the cars  some cars  many cars etc.

- I've got a car.
- There aren't many cars in the car-park.

Don't use the singular (car/house etc.) alone. You need a/an (Unit 59):

- I haven't got a car. (not 'I haven't got car.')

**Uncountable nouns**

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>water</th>
<th>rain</th>
<th>air</th>
<th>rice</th>
<th>salt</th>
<th>oil</th>
<th>plastic</th>
<th>money</th>
<th>music</th>
<th>tennis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

You cannot say one/two/three ... + these things: one a salt  two a moneys

Uncountable nouns have only one form:

- money  the money  my money  some money  much money etc.

- I've got some money.
- There isn't much money in the box.
- Money isn't everything.

Don't use a/an + uncountable nouns: X money  X music

But you can say a piece of .../a bottle of ... etc. + uncountable nouns:

- a piece of cheese  a piece of music  a glass of water
- a bowl of rice  a cup of coffee  a bottle of milk
- a game of tennis  a can of oil  a bar of chocolate

► Unit 62  countable/uncountable 2
61.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of the things are:

bucket  cup  sand  tea  toothpaste  credit  card  money  hat
salt  soap  toothbrush  umbrella

1 salt .......................................................... 4 .......................................................... 7 .......................................................... 10 ..........................................................
2 an umbrella ............................................. 5 .......................................................... 8 .......................................................... 11 ..........................................................
3 .......................................................... 6 .......................................................... 9 .......................................................... 12 ..........................................................

61.2 Some of these sentences need a/an. Some of the sentences are right. Put in a/an where necessary.

1 I haven't got car. a car ..........................................................
2 Salt is not expensive. okay ..........................................................
3 Ann never wears hat. ..........................................................
4 Are you looking for job? ..........................................................
5 Mary doesn't eat meat. ..........................................................
6 I'm going to party tonight. ..........................................................
7 Do you like cheese? ..........................................................
8 Do you want cup of coffee? ..........................................................
9 I never drink milk. ..........................................................
10 Britain is island. ..........................................................
11 Jack made very bad mistake. ..........................................................
12 Everybody needs food. ..........................................................
13 Can you drive car? ..........................................................
14 I've got very good idea. ..........................................................

61.3 What are these things? Look at the pictures and write a ... of ... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

a bar  cup  loaf  bottle  glass  piece  bowl  jar  piece
of bread  milk  tea  chocolate  paper  water  honey  soup  wood

1 a bottle of milk ..........................................................
2 ..........................................................
3 ..........................................................
4 ..........................................................
5 ..........................................................
6 ..........................................................
7 ..........................................................
8 ..........................................................
9 ..........................................................
UNIT 62  a car/some money (countable/uncountable 2)

Unit 61 countable/uncountable 1
a/an and some

a/an + singular countable nouns (car/apple/shoe etc.):
- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):
- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?
  (= two or more apples)

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):
- I need some money.
- Would you like some cheese?
  (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)

Compare a/an and some:
- She bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music.

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:

- a cake
- some cakes
- some cake or a piece of cake

- a chicken
- some chickens
- some chicken or a piece of chicken

- Be careful with these words – they are usually uncountable in English:
  - bread
  - weather
  - information
  - advice
  - hair
  - furniture
  - paper
  - news
- I'm going to buy some bread (or a loaf of bread). (not 'a bread')
- It's nice weather today. (not 'It's a nice weather')
- I need some information about hotels in London.
- They have some very nice furniture in their house. (not 'furnitures')
- She's got long hair. (not 'long hairs')
- I want to make a list. Can you give me some paper (or a piece of paper/a sheet of paper)? (not 'a paper' – 'a paper' = a newspaper)
- I've just had some good news about my holiday. (not 'a good news')
62.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures to make sentences (I bought ... ).

1 I bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
2 I bought ........................................
3 ...........................................................
4 ...........................................................

62.2 Write sentences with Would you like a/an ...? or Would you like some ...?

1 Would you like some cheese ? ........................................
2 Would you like ........................................
3 Would ........................................
4 ...........................................................
5 ...........................................................
6 ...........................................................

62.3 Put in a/an or some.

1 I read a .... newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music.
2 I need .... money. I want to buy .......... food.
3 We met .... interesting people at the party.
4 I'm going to open .......... window to get .......... fresh air.
5 She didn't eat much for lunch — only .......... apple and .......... bread.
6 We live in .......... big house. There's .......... nice garden with .......... beautiful trees.
7 I'm going to make .......... table. First, I need .......... wood.
8 We talked to her and she gave us .......... very good advice.
10 We had .......... nice weather when we were on holiday.

62.4 Look at the underlined words in these sentences. Which is right?

1 I'm going to buy some new shoes. (shoes is right)
2 They are going to buy some new chair/chairs.
3 They are going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
4 He's got big blue eye/eyes.
5 He's got short fair hair/hairs.
6 The tourist guide gave us some information/informations about the town.
UNIT 63  a/an and the

a/an

- They've got a car. (there are many cars and they've got one)
- I'm writing a letter. (there are many letters and I'm writing one)
- When we were in London, we stayed at a small hotel. (there are many small hotels in London)
- Rome is a big city in Italy. (there are many big cities in Italy and Rome is one)
- Britain is an island. (there are many islands and Britain is one)

(There are three windows here. a window = window 1 or 2 or 3)

the

- I'm going to clean the car tomorrow. (= my car)
- I wrote to her but the letter never arrived. (= the letter that I wrote)
- We didn't enjoy our holiday. The hotel was terrible. (= our hotel)
- Rome is the capital of Italy. (there is only one capital of Italy)
- What is the largest island in the world?

(There is only one window here, so we know which window.)

- We say the ... when it is clear which thing we mean. For example:
  the door/the ceiling/the floor/the carpet/the light etc. (of a room)
  the roof/the garden/the kitchen/the bathroom etc. (of a house)
  the centre/the station/the airport/the town hall etc. (of a town)
  - 'Where's Tom?' 'In the garden.' (= the garden of this house)
  - I turned off the light, opened the door and went out. (= the light and the door of the room)
  - Do you live very far from the centre? (= the centre of your town)
  - I'd like to speak to the manager, please. (= the manager of this shop)
UNIT 63  Exercises

63.1 Put in a/an or the.

1 I wrote to her but the letter never arrived.
2 Britain is an island.
3 What is the name of this village?
4 Jane is a very nice person. You must meet her.
5 Montreal is a large city in Canada.
6 What is the largest city in Canada?
7 'What time is it?' 'I don't know. I haven't got a watch.'
8 When I went to Rome, I stayed with an Italian friend of mine.
9 You look very tired. You need a holiday.
10 Don't sit on the floor. It's very dirty.
11 'Let's go to a restaurant this evening.'
   'That's a good idea. Which restaurant shall we go to?'
12 Can you turn on the radio, please? I want to listen to some music.
13 Tom is in the bathroom. He's having a bath.
14 This is a nice room, but I don't like the colour of the carpet.
15 We live in an old house near the station. It's two miles from the centre.

63.2 Put in a/an or the where necessary in these sentences.

1 I turned off the light, opened the door and went out. the light the door
2 Excuse me, can I ask a question, please?
3 Alan is the best player in our football team.
4 How far is it from here to the airport?
5 Enjoy your holiday and don't forget to send me a postcard!
6 Have you got a ticket for the concert tomorrow night?
7 What is the name of the director of the film we saw last night?
8 Yesterday I bought a jacket and a shirt. Jacket was cheap but the shirt was expensive.

9 Peter and Mary have two children, a boy and a girl. Boy is seven years old and the girl is three.

63.3 Complete the sentences. Use a/an or the + one of these:

bicycle capital cigarette play difficult language kitchen nice day next train roof small hotel

1 Rome is the capital of Italy.
2 When we were in London, we stayed at a small hotel.
3 Can you ride a bicycle?
4 What's that man doing on the roof of that house? Is he repairing something?
5 We went to the theatre last night but the play wasn't very good.
6 Do you think English is difficult to learn?
7 'Would you like a cigarette?' 'No, thanks. I don't smoke.'
8 'Where's Jack?' 'He's in the kitchen. He's cooking something.'
9 Excuse me, what time is it today. Let's go out.
10 It's
UNIT 64  the

- **the** ... = it is clear which thing or person we mean  (Unit 63):
  - Rome is the capital of Italy. (there is only one capital)
  - What is the name of this village? (the village has only one name)
  - Excuse me, where is the nearest bank?
  - Who is the President of the United States?
  - Can you tell me the time, please? (= the time now)
  - My office is on the first floor. (= the first floor of the building)

Don’t forget the:
- Do you live near the city centre? (not ‘near city centre’)
- Which is the best restaurant in this town? (not ‘Which is best’)

- **the top of .../the end of ... etc.**
  - Write your name at the top of the page.
  - The beginning of the film was not very good.
  - My house is at the end of this street.
  - The table is in the middle of the room.
  - Do you drive on the left or on the right in your country?

- **the same ...**
  - We live in the same street. (not ‘in same street’)
  - These books are not different. They are the same. (not ‘They are same.’)

Note that we say:

| the | the sun/the moon/the world/the sky/the sea/the ground/the country:
|-----|---------------------------------------------------|
|     | - The sky is blue and the sun is shining.
|     | - I like swimming in the sea.
|     | - They live in a town but they want to live in the country.

| the | the police/the fire brigade/the army (of a city, country etc.):
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------|
|     | - My brother is a soldier. He’s in the army.

| the | the piano/guitar/trumpet etc. (musical instruments):
|-----|--------------------------------------------------|
|     | - Tom is learning to play the piano.

| the | the radio but television (without the):
|-----|--------------------------------------------------|
|     | - I often listen to the radio. What’s on the radio tonight?
|     | - I like watching television. What’s on television tonight?
|     | - But Can you turn off the television (= the TV set)?

| the | breakfast/lunch/dinner (without the):
|-----|--------------------------------------------------|
|     | - I never have breakfast. (not ‘the breakfast’)
|     | - What are you going to have for lunch?
|     | - Dinner is ready!
64.1 Put in the where necessary. Write ‘okay’ if the sentence is correct.

1 Sky is blue and sun is shining. The sky the sun
2 What are you going to have for lunch? okay
3 Our apartment is on third floor.
4 Help! Fire! Somebody call fire brigade.
5 Who was first man to walk on moon?
6 Which city is capital of your country?
7 What is largest city in world?
8 Would you like to be in army?
9 Do you live near sea?
10 After dinner we watched television.
11 ‘Where is your dictionary?’ ‘It’s on top shelf on right.’
12 We live in country, about five miles from nearest village.
13 Ann is coming to see us at end of May or beginning of April.
14 ‘Is this book cheaper than that one?’ ‘No, they’re same price.’
15 Prime Minister is most important person in British government.
16 I don’t know everybody in this photograph. Who is man on left?
17 It was a very nice hotel but I don’t remember name.
18 I didn’t like her first time I met her.
19 What do you usually have for breakfast?
20 ‘Have you got any milk?’ ‘Yes, there’s some in fridge.’

64.2 Complete these sentences. Use the same + one of these words:

age colour day problem street time

1 I live in King Street and you live in King Street. We live in

2 I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at

3 I’ve got no money and you’ve got no money. We’ve got

4 He’s 25 and she’s 25. They are

5 My shirt is dark blue and my jacket is dark blue. They are

6 I’m leaving on Monday and you’re leaving on Monday. We’re leaving on

64.3 Complete these sentences. Use the words in the list. Use the if necessary.

breakfast dinner guitar lunch police radio sky sun television

1 ‘Can you tell me the time please?’ ‘Yes, it’s half past six.’
2 We had dinner at a restaurant last night.
3 is a star. It gives us light and warmth.
4 Did you see the film on last night?
5 I was hungry this morning because I didn’t have

6 stopped me because I was driving too fast.
7 ‘Can you play ?’ ‘No, I can’t play any musical instruments.’
8 ‘What did you have for ?’ ‘Just a salad.’
9 When I’m working at home I like listening to

10 is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
UNIT 65  go home/go to work/go to the cinema

She's at work.  They're going to school.  He's in bed.

go to work/get to work/be at work/start work/finish work etc.
- What time do you go to work in the morning? (not ‘to the work’)
- I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.

go to school/be at school/start school/leave school etc.
- What did you learn at school today? (not ‘at the school’)

go to university/be at university etc.
- After she leaves school. (not ‘leaves the school’) she wants to go to university. (not ‘go to the university’)

go to church/be at (or in) church
- Don usually goes to church on Sundays. (not ‘to the church’)

go to bed/be in bed
- I'm tired. I'm going to bed. (not ‘to the bed’)

go to hospital/be in hospital
- Jack is very ill. He's in hospital. (not ‘in the hospital’)

go to prison/be in prison
- I wouldn't like to be in prison. (not ‘in the prison’)

go home/get home/arrive home/come home/walk home/leave home etc.
be at home/stay at home etc.
- I'm tired. I'm going home. (not ‘to home’)
- Are you going out or are you staying at home?

the (with the)

the cinema  Do you often go to the cinema?
the theatre  We're going to the theatre this evening.
the bank  I must go to the bank today.
the post office  Are you going to the post office?
the doctor  You're ill. You must go to the doctor.
the dentist  I'm going to the dentist tomorrow.
the toilet  Excuse me, I must go to the toilet.

also the station/the airport/the city centre etc.  (Unit 63)
UNIT 65 Exercises

65.1 Where are these people? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1 He's in .......... bed .......... 3 She's in .......... 5 They're at .......... 2 They're at .......... 4 She's at .......... 6 He's in ..........

65.2 Complete these sentences with the words in the list. Use the if necessary.

airport bank bed church cinema dentist home school station university

1 I need some money. I must go to .......... the bank .......... 2 Don usually goes to .......... church .......... on Sundays.
3 Jane has a bad tooth, so she's going to .......... 4 It's late and I'm very tired. I'm going to .......... 5 Gary wants to study computer science at .......... 6 She loves films. She goes to .......... very often.
7 My plane leaves at 8.30, so I must be at .......... at about 7.30.
8 In Britain, children go to .......... from the age of five.
9 I telephoned you last night but you weren't at .......... 10 There were a lot of people at .......... waiting for the train.

65.3 Put in the where necessary. Write 'okay' if the sentence is complete.

1 I must go to bank today. .......... the bank .......... 2 I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. .......... okay .......... 3 Mary has gone to doctor. She isn't feeling well.
4 What time do you usually get home from work? .......... 5 'Where are you going?' 'To bed.' .......... 6 'Where are you going?' 'To bank.' .......... 7 My children usually arrive home from school at 4.30.
8 Do you live a long way from city centre? .......... 9 What time do you start work in the morning?
10 Would you like to go to theatre this evening? .......... 11 Would you like to go to university? .......... 12 'Where's Fred?' 'He's in toilet.' .......... 13 What are you going to do when you leave school?
14 Jim is in hospital. He's going to have an operation.
15 Do you ever go to church? .......... 16 Excuse me, can you tell me where post office is?
17 Why is Angela always late for work? .......... 18 Why is he in prison? He didn't do anything wrong.
UNIT 66  I like music  I hate examinations

(not 'the music')  (not 'the examinations')  (not 'the cold weather')

Do not say 'the' for general ideas:
- I like music. (= music in general)
- I like classical music. (= classical music in general)
- We don't eat meat very often. (not 'the meat')
- Life is not possible without water. (not 'the life/the water')
- I hate examinations. (= examinations in general)
- Do they sell foreign newspapers in that shop?
- I'm not very good at writing letters.

Do not say 'the' for games and sports:
- My favourite sports are tennis and skiing. (not 'the tennis/the skiing')

Do not say 'the' for languages or academic subjects (history/geography/biology/physics etc.):
- Do you think English is difficult? (not 'the English')
- Tom's brother is studying physics and chemistry.

The and that

- Flowers are beautiful. (= flowers in general)
  but Your garden is very nice. The flowers are beautiful. (= the flowers in your garden)

- I don't like cold weather. (= cold weather in general)
  but The weather isn't very nice today. (= the weather today)

- Are you interested in history?
  but Are you interested in the history of your country?

- Everybody needs food. (= food in general)
  but It's a nice hotel and the food is very good.
66.1 What do you think about these things? Begin your sentences with:
I love ... / I like ... / I don't mind ... (= it's okay) / I don't like ... / I hate ...

1 (examinations) I hate examinations.
2 (dogs)
3 (hard work)
4 (Italian food)
5 (loud music)
6 (small children)
7 (hot weather)
8 (staying in hotels)
9 (opera)
10 (big cities)

66.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm very interested in ...
I'm interested in ...
I'm not interested in ...
I know a lot about ...
I don't know much about ...
I don't know anything about ...

1 (history) I'm very interested in history.
2 (politics) I
3 (sport)
4 (art)
5 (astronomy)
6 (economics)

66.3 Look at the underlined words in these sentences. Which is right (the or /)?

1 Potatoes / The potatoes are not expensive. (Potatoes is right.)
2 This is a good meal. Potatoes / The potatoes are very nice. (The potatoes is right.)
3 Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4 I never drink coffee / the coffee.
5 'Where's coffee / the coffee?' 'It's in the cupboard.'
6 Jan doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
7 Tennis / The tennis is a very popular sport.
8 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
9 I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
10 You must visit the art gallery. Paintings / The paintings are very beautiful.
11 Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.
12 English / The English is the language of international business.
13 Children / The children learn things / the things very quickly.
14 Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
15 I enjoy eating in restaurants / the restaurants.
16 Do you think that capitalism / the capitalism is a good economic system?
17 I enjoy taking photographs / the photographs. It's my hobby.
18 I must show you photographs / the photographs I took when I was on holiday.
Places (continents/countries/states/islands/cities/towns/villages etc.)

Usually we do not say ‘the’ + names of places:
- France is a very large country. (not ‘the France’)
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.

But we say the + republic/states/kingdom:
- the Republic of Ireland / the Irish Republic
- the United States (of America) (the USA)
- the United Kingdom (the UK)

Places in towns (streets/buildings etc.)

Usually we do not say ‘the’ + names of streets, squares etc.:
- Kevin lives in Coronation Street.
- Where is Highfield Road, please?
- Trafalgar Square is in the centre of London.

We do not say ‘the’ + name of place + airport/station/university/castle etc.:
- Munich Airport
- Westminster Abbey
- Paddington Station
- Edinburgh Castle
- Cambridge University
- London Zoo

But we usually say the + names of hotels/restaurants/pubs/cinemas/theatres/museums:
- the Hilton (Hotel)
- the Star of India (restaurant)
- the Odeon (cinema)
- the National Theatre
- the Tate Gallery (art gallery)

Seas, rivers etc.

We say the + names of oceans/seas/streams/canals:
- the Atlantic (Ocean)
- the (River) Nile
- the Mediterranean (Sea)
- the Suez Canal

the ... of ...

We say the + names with ... of ...
- the Republic of Ireland
- the Great Wall of China
- the Bank of England
- the Tower of London

the north/south/east/west/middle (of ...):
- I’ve been to the north of Italy but not to the south.

the -s (plural names)

We say the + plural names (the -s) of countries/islands/mountains:
- the Netherlands
- the Canary Islands
- the Philippines
- the Andes
67.1 These are geography questions. Choose your answer from the box. Sometimes you need to use 'The'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alps</th>
<th>Amazon</th>
<th>Atlantic</th>
<th>Bahamas</th>
<th>Cairo</th>
<th>Kenya</th>
<th>Red Sea</th>
<th>United States</th>
<th>Asia</th>
<th>Andes</th>
<th>Pacific</th>
<th>Malta</th>
<th>Tokyo</th>
<th>Rhine</th>
<th>Switzerland</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
2. The Atlantic is between Africa and America.
3. ........................................ is a country in the middle of Europe.
4. ........................................ is a river in South America.
5. ........................................ is the largest continent in the world.
6. ........................................ is the largest ocean.
7. ........................................ is a river in Europe.
8. ........................................ is between Canada and Mexico.
9. ........................................ is in East Africa.
10. ....................................... are mountains in South America.
11. ....................................... is the capital of Japan.
12. ....................................... is an island in the Mediterranean.
13. ....................................... are mountains in central Europe.
14. ....................................... is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
15. ....................................... are a group of islands near Florida.

67.2 Put in the where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write 'okay'.

1. Kevin lives in Coronation Street. okay
2. Have you ever been to National Theatre? the National Theatre
3. 'Where are you staying?' 'At Intercontinental Hotel.'
4. Milan is a large city in north of Italy.
5. Brussels is the capital of Belgium.
6. Manila is the capital of Philippines.
7. National Gallery is in Trafalgar Square in London.
8. Most of the best shops are in Merrion Street.
9. Rocky Mountains are in North America.
11. Have you ever been to British Museum?
12. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
13. Last night we saw a play at Royal Theatre.
15. Alan studied chemistry at London University.
16. When I finish my studies, I'm going to United States for a year.
17. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.
18. There are two cinemas in our town – Regal and Plaza.
19. If you sail from Britain to Denmark, you cross North Sea.
20. Mary comes from a small village in west of Ireland.
21. Europe is not a large continent but it has a large population.
22. Have you ever been to USA?
UNIT 68  this/that/these/those

this (singular)
this house/picture/man etc.

Do you like this picture?

that (singular)
that house/picture/man etc.

Do you like that picture?

these (plural)
these houses/flowers/men etc.

These flowers are for you.

those (plural)
those houses/flowers/people etc.

Who are those people?

We use this/that/these/those with a noun (this hotel/that girl etc.) or without a noun (this/that etc.):

- This hotel is expensive but it's very nice.
- 'Who's that girl?' 'I don't know.'
- Do you like these shoes? I bought them last week.
- Don't eat those apples. They're bad.

- This is a nice hotel but it's very expensive.
- 'Excuse me, is this your bag?' 'Oh, yes. Thank you very much.'
- 'Who's that?' (= Who's that girl/woman?) 'I don't know. I've never seen her before.'
- Which shoes do you like most? These or those?
68.1 Put in **this** or **these**.
1 this  chair  3 sandwich  5 children  7 houses  
2 these  chairs  4 things  6 place  8 trousers

Put in **that** or **those**.
9 picture  11 men  13 eggs  15 room  
10 socks  12 tree  14 woman  16 plates

68.2 Write questions: **Is this/that your ...?** or **Are these/those your ...?**

68.3 Complete the sentences. Use **this/that/these/those** + these words:
birds  house  plates  postcards  seat  shoes

1 Do you like **these shoes**?
2 Who lives in ............................................................ ?
3 Look at ............................................................ !
4 How much are ............................................................ ?
5 Excuse me is ............................................................ free?
6 ............................................................ are dirty.
UNIT 69  one/ones

one (= a ...)

Would you like one?
= Would you like a chocolate?

one = a/an ... (a chocolate/a book/an apple etc.)

- I need a pen. Have you got one? (one = a pen)
- A: Is there a bank near here?
  B: Yes, there's one at the end of this street. (one = a bank)

one and ones

ones (singular)

Which one do you want?

Which one? (= Which hat?)

one = hat/book/girl etc.

this one/that one
- Which car is yours? This one or that one? (= this/that car)

the one ...
- A: Which hotel did you stay at?
  B: The one near the station.

the ... one
- I don't like the black coat but I like the brown one.
- Don't buy that camera. Buy the other one.

a/an ... one
- This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
- That biscuit was nice. I'm going to have another one. (another ➔ Unit 59)

ones (plural)

Which ones do you want?

Which ones? (= Which flowers?)

ones = flowers/books/girls etc.

We use these/those alone (not usually 'these ones/those ones'):
- Which flowers do you want? These or those?

the ones ...
- A: Which cigarettes are yours?
  B: The ones on the table.

the ... ones
- I don't like the red shoes but I like the green ones.
- Don't buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

(some) ... ones
- These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?
- My shoes are very old. I must buy some new ones.
Exercises

69.1 A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use one (not 'a/an ...') in the answers.

B doesn't need a car  B has just had a cup of coffee
there's a chemist in Mill Road  B can't ride a bicycle
B hasn't got a pen  B hasn't got an umbrella

1 A: Can you lend me a pen?  B: I'm sorry, I haven't got one.
2 A: Would you like to have a car?  B: No, I don't
3 A: Have you got a bicycle?  B: No, I can't
4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella?  B: I'm sorry.
5 A: Is there a chemist near here?  B: Yes,
6 A: Would you like a cup of coffee?  B: No thank you,

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use a/an ... one. Use these words in your answers:
clean  better  big  different  new  old

1 This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?
2 I'm going to sell my car and then I'm going to buy ...........................................................................
3 That's not a very good photograph but this is ...................................................................................
4 This box is too small. I need ............................................................................................................
5 I want today's newspaper. This is ..................................................................................................
6 Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to ................................................................

69.3 Use the information in the box to complete these conversations. Use one/ones.

the coat is black  the pictures are on the wall
the girl is tall with long hair  the books are on the top shelf
the hotel is near the station  the flowers are yellow
the house has got a red door  the shoes are green
I took the photographs on the beach last week  the man has got a moustache and glasses

1 A: We stayed at a hotel.  B: which one?
A: The one near the station.
2 A: Those shoes are nice.  B: .................................................................................................
A: .................................................................................................
3 A: That's a nice house.  B: .................................................................................................
A: .................................................................................................
4 A: I like that coat.  B: .................................................................................................
A: .................................................................................................
5 A: I like those pictures.  B: .................................................................................................
A: .................................................................................................

6 A: Are those your books?  B: .................................................................................................
A: .................................................................................................
7 A: Do you know that girl?  B: .................................................................................................
A: .................................................................................................
8 A: Those flowers are beautiful.  B: .................................................................................................
A: .................................................................................................
9 A: Who's that man?  B: .................................................................................................
A: .................................................................................................
10 A: Have you seen my photographs?  B: .................................................................................................
A: .................................................................................................
UNIT 70  some  any

some

I've got some money.

Use some in positive sentences:
- I'm going to buy some eggs.
- There is some ice in the fridge.
- They made some mistakes.
- She said something.
- I saw somebody (or someone).

any

I haven't got any money.

Use any in negative sentences:
- I'm not going to buy any eggs.
- There isn't any ice in the fridge.
- They didn't make any mistakes.
- She didn't say anything.
- I didn't see anybody (or anyone).

any and some in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use any:
- Is there any ice in the fridge?
- Did they make any mistakes?
- Are you doing anything this evening?
- I can't find Ann. Has anybody seen her?

We normally use some (not any) when we offer things (Would you like some ... ?):
- A: Would you like some coffee?
  B: Yes, please.
- A: Would you like something to eat?
  B: No, thank you. I'm not hungry.

or ask for things (Can I have some ... ?)

Can you lend me some ... ? etc.:
- 'Can I have some soup, please?'  'Yes, of course. Help yourself.'
- 'Can you lend me some money?'  'I'm sorry, I can't.'

Compare some and any:
- We've got some cheese but we haven't got any bread.
- I didn't take any photographs but Ann took some. (= some photographs)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want any. (= any coffee)
- I've just made some coffee. Would you like some? (= some coffee)
- I haven't got any money. Can you lend me some? (= some money)
70.1 Put in some or any.

1 I'm going to buy some eggs.
2 They didn't make any mistakes.
3 I can pay. I've got money.
4 There aren't shops in this part of the town.
5 George and Alice haven't got children.
6 Have you got brothers or sisters?
7 There are beautiful flowers in the garden.
8 Are there letters for me this morning?
9 I haven't got stamps but Ann's got.
10 Do you know good hotels in London?
11 'Would you like tea?' 'Yes, please.'
12 Don't buy rice. We don't need it.
13 We haven't got bread, so I'm going out to buy it.
14 When we were on holiday, we visited very interesting places.
15 I went out to buy milk but they didn't have it in the shop.
16 I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please?

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use some or any + one of these words:

air batteries chairs cheese friends languages milk money
photographs problems shampoo stamps

1 I can't buy you a drink. I haven't got any money.
2 I want to wash my hair. Is there a shower?
3 I'm going to the post office to get stamps.
4 Can you speak a foreign language?
5 I haven't got my camera, so I can't take photographs.
6 Sorry we're late. We had to wait with the car.
7 Everybody was standing because there weren't enough chairs in the hall.
8 It's hot in this office. I'm going out for fresh air.
9 Why isn't the radio working? Are there any problems in it?
10 Can I have something in my coffee, please?
11 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with a friend of mine.
12 'Would you like something?' 'No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.'

70.3 Put in somebody (or someone)/something/anybody (or anyone)/anything.

1 She said something but I didn't understand it.
2 'What's wrong?' 'There's something in my eye.'
3 Do you know anything about politics?
4 I went to the shop but I didn't buy anything.
5 Somebody has broken the window. I don't know who.
6 There isn't anything in the box. It's empty.
7 I'm looking for my keys. Has somebody seen them?
8 Would you like anything to drink?
9 I didn't eat anything because I wasn't hungry.
10 I can do this job alone. I don't need anybody to help me.
UNIT 71  
not + any  no  none

He hasn't got any money.

He's got no money.
A: How much money has he got?
B: None.

■ not (n't) + any
- I'm not going to do any work this evening.
- There aren't any good hotels in the town.
- Ann took some photographs but I didn't take any. (= any photographs)

■ no + noun (no money/no job etc.): no ... = not + any or not + a
We use no ... especially after have/has (got) and there is/are:
- He has got no money. (= He hasn't got any money.)
- There are no buses after 11.30. (= There aren't any buses after 11.30.)
- It's a nice house but there's no garden. (= It's a nice house but there isn't a garden.)

■ Remember: negative verb + any positive verb + no
- I haven't got any friends, or I've got no friends.
  (but not 'I haven't got no friends. ')
- There aren't any good hotels in this town, or There are no good hotels in this town.

■ no and none
Use no + noun (no money/no friends/no sugar etc.):
- I can't wait. I've got no time.
- There is no sugar in your coffee.
Use none alone (without a noun):
- 'How much time have we got?'  'None (= no time). We must go now.'
- 'How many mistakes did you make?'  'None.' (= no mistakes)

■ none and no-one
none = 0 (zero). None is an answer for How much?/How many? (things or people):
- 'How much money have you got?'  'None.' (= no money)
- 'How many people did you meet?'  'None.' (= no people)

no-one = nobody (► Unit 72). No-one is an answer for Who?:
- 'Who did you meet?'  'No-one.' (= nobody)
71.1 Write these sentences again with no.
1 He hasn’t got any money. He's got no money.
2 There aren’t any pictures on the walls. There are
3 Carol hasn’t got any free time. Carol
4 There isn’t a restaurant in this hotel.

Write these sentences again with any.
5 He’s got no money. He hasn’t got any money.
6 There’s no oil in the tank. There
7 I’ve got no stamps. I
8 Tom's got no brothers or sisters.

71.2 Put in no or any.
1 There aren’t any good hotels here.
2 There are no buses today.
3 I didn’t write letters last night.
4 There are shops in this part of the town.
5 She can't speak foreign languages.
6 Don't buy food. We don't need
7 My brother is married but he's got children.
8 I'm afraid there’s coffee. Would you like some tea?
9 'Look at those birds!' ‘Birds? Where? I can't see birds.'
10 The man asked me for money but I didn’t give him

71.3 Complete the sentences. Use any or no + one of these words:
cigarettes difference film friends furniture money photographs questions work swimming-pool

1 I’m not going to do any work this evening.
2 I didn’t smoke yesterday.
3 They want to go on holiday but they’ve got
4 It’s a nice hotel but there’s
5 I’m not going to answer
6 He's always alone. He's got
7 There is between these two machines. They are the same.
8 I can't take . There's in the camera.
9 There wasn’t in the room. It was completely empty.

71.4 Give short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use none where necessary.
1 How many letters have you written today? Two/A lot/None.
2 How many sisters have you got?  
3 How much coffee did you drink yesterday? 
4 How many photographs have you taken today?  
5 How many legs has a snake got?
UNIT 72  not + anybody/anyone/anything
nobody/no-one/nothing

not + anybody/anyone
nobody/no-one
(for people)

There isn't anybody in the room.
There is nobody in the room.
A: Who is in the room?
B: Nobody.

not + anything
nothing
(for things)

There isn't anything in the bag.
There is nothing in the bag.
A: What's in the bag?
B: Nothing.

anybody = anyone  nobody = no-one (-body and -one are the same):
- I don't know anybody (or anyone).
- There is no-one (or nobody) here.

not (n't) + anybody/anyone/anything

- Please don't tell anybody (or anyone).
- Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember anything.

nobody = not + anybody  nothing = not + anything
no-one = not + anyone

- I'm lonely. I've got nobody to talk to. (= I haven't got anybody)
- The house is empty. There is no-one in it. (= there isn't anyone)
- She said nothing. (= She didn't say anything.)

You can use nobody/no-one/nothing at the beginning of a sentence or alone (without other words):
- The house is empty. Nobody lives there. (not 'Anybody lives there.')
- Nobody is perfect.
- 'Who did you speak to?' 'No-one.'
- 'What did you say?' 'Nothing.' (not 'Anything.')

Remember:  negative verb + anybody/anyone/anything
positive verb + nobody/no-one/nothing
- He doesn't understand anything. (not 'He doesn't understand nothing.')
- Don't tell anybody. (not 'Don't tell nobody.')
- There is nothing to do in this town. (not 'There isn't nothing to do.')
72.1 Write these sentences again with nobody/no-one/nothing.

1 There isn't anything in the bag. ................................................... There's nothing in the bag.
2 There isn't anybody in the office. .......................................... There's ........................................
3 I haven't got anything to do. ................................................... I ...........................................
4 There isn't anything on TV tonight. ........................................
5 Jack hasn't got anyone to help him. ......................................
6 We didn't find anything. ......................................................

72.2 Write these sentences again with anybody/anyone/anything.

1 There is nothing in the bag. ................................................... There isn't anything in the bag.
2 I've got nothing to read. ...................................................... I haven't got ................................
3 There's nobody in the bathroom. ........................................
4 We've got nothing to eat. ......................................................
5 There was no-one on the bus. ..............................................
6 She heard nothing. ..............................................................

72.3 Answer these questions with nobody/no-one/nothing.

1 What did you say? Nothing. ................................................... 5 Who knows the answer? ....................................................
2 Who saw you? Nobody. ........................................................ 6 What did you buy? .........................................................
3 What do you want? ............................................................. 7 What happened? ..........................................................
4 Who did you meet? .............................................................. 8 Who was late? ..............................................................

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.
Use nobody/no-one/nothing or anybody/anyone/anything.

1a I didn't say anything. ...................................................... 5a .................................................. the answer.
2a Nobody saw me. ............................................................. 6a I ..................................................
3a I don't ................................................................. 7a ...................................................
4a I didn't ................................................................. 8a ..................................................

72.4 Complete the sentences with nobody/no-one/nothing/anybody/anyone/anything.

1 I went out of the house. Nobody saw me.
2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember anything.
3 Be quiet! Don't say .........................................................
4 I didn't know about the meeting. told me.
5 'What did you have to eat?' I wasn't hungry.'
6 'What did you say?' 'I didn't say ............................................
7 George has gone away. knows where he is. He didn't tell
   ............................ where he was going.
8 'What are you doing this evening?' Why?
9 I don't know about car engines.
10 'How much does it cost to visit the museum?' It's free.'
11 She was sitting alone. She wasn't with ..........................
12 I heard a knock on the door but when I opened it there was .................................. outside.
UNIT 73  some/-any/-no-+-body/-one/-thing/-where

Somebody (or someone) has broken the window.
somebody/someone = a person but we don’t know who

There is something in her mouth.
something = a thing but we don’t know what

Tom lives somewhere near London.
somewhere = in a place or to a place but we don’t know where

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>people (-body or -one*)</th>
<th>things (-thing)</th>
<th>places (-where)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some-</td>
<td>somebody or someone</td>
<td>something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any-</td>
<td>anybody or anyone</td>
<td>anything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no-</td>
<td>nobody or no-one</td>
<td>nothing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>somewhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>anywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>nowhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* -body and -one are the same: somebody = someone, nobody = no-one etc.

---

- There is somebody (or someone) in the garden.
- She said something but I didn’t understand her.
- They live somewhere in the south of England.

**in questions (► Unit 70)**
- Is there anybody (or anyone) in the garden?
- Are you doing anything this evening?
- Did you go anywhere interesting for your holidays?

**in negatives (not + any-) (► Units 70 and 72)**
- There isn’t anybody (or anyone) in the garden.
- It’s dark. I can’t see anything.
- I’m staying here. I’m not going anywhere.

- There is nobody (or no-one) in the garden.
- ‘What did you say?’ ‘Nothing.’
- I don’t like this town. There is nowhere to go.

- You can use something/anybody/nowhere etc. + to ....
- I’m hungry. I want something to eat. (= something that I can eat)
- He hasn’t got anybody to talk to. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There’s nowhere to go in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)
73.1 Put in somebody (or someone)/something/somewhere.

1 She said something. ........................................ What did she say?
2 I've lost ......................................................... What have you lost?
3 They went .................................................... Where did they go?
4 I'm going to telephone ................................... Who are you going to telephone?

Put in nobody (or no-one)/nothing/nowhere.

5 What did you say? ........................................... Nothing.
6 Where are you going? ......................................
7 What do you want? .........................................
8 Who are you looking for? ...............................

Now answer the same questions with full sentences. Use not + anybody (or anyone) anything/anywhere.

5a I didn't say anything. ..................................
6a I'm not going ..............................................
7a I .................................................................
8a I .................................................................

73.2 Put in somebody/anything/anywhere etc.

1 It's dark. I can't see anything ..................................
2 Tom lives somewhere near London. ..................
3 Do you know about computers? ......................
4 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear' ..........................
5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for' .......
6 'What's wrong?' 'I've got in my eye.' ..............
7 'Did see you?' 'No, ' ...........................
8 They weren't hungry, so they didn't eat ...........
9 'What is going to happen?' 'I don't know. knows.'
10 'Do you know in London?' 'Yes, I've got a few friends there.'
11 'What's in that cupboard?' 'It's empty.' .........
12 I'm looking for my lighter. I can't find it ..........

73.3 Complete the sentences. Use a word from the first box + to + a word from the second box. (You can use a word more than once.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>something</th>
<th>anything</th>
<th>nothing</th>
<th>somewhere</th>
<th>anywhere</th>
<th>nowhere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>drink</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go. .....................
2 There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got ..............................
3 I'm bored. I've got ..............................................................................
4 'Why are you standing?' 'Because there isn't ......................
5 'Would you like .................?' 'Yes, please - a glass of orange juice
6 Children need .................................................................
7 I want ............................... I'm going to buy a magazine. ..................
8 All the hotels were full. There was ..............................................
UNIT 74 every everybody/everything etc.

- **every**

  Every house in the street is the same.
  
  *(every house in the street = all the houses in the street)*

  Use *every* + *singular noun* *(every house/every country/every time etc.)*:
  - Alice has been to *every country* in Europe. *(not 'every countrys')*
  - Every summer we have a holiday by the sea.
  - She looks different every time I see her.

  Use a *singular verb* *(is/was/has etc.)* after *every* ...:
  - Every house in the street is the same. *(not 'Every house ... are')*
  - Every country has a national flag. *(not 'Every country have')*

  Compare *every* and *all*:
  - Every student in the class passed the examination.
    All the students in the class passed the examination.
  - Every country has a national flag.
    All countries have a national flag.

- **every**

  all  

  day/morning/evening/night/summer etc.

  every day = on all days:
  - A: How often do you read a newspaper?
    B: Every day.
  - Bill watches TV every evening.
    (= on all evenings of the week)

  all day = the complete day from beginning to end:
  - The weather was bad yesterday. It rained all day.
  - I was tired after work yesterday, so I watched TV all evening. (= the complete evening)

- **everybody** *(or everyone)/everything/everywhere*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>everybody/everyone</th>
<th>everybody/everyone needs friends. (= all people need friends)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(people)</td>
<td>Have you got everything you need? (= all the things you need)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>everything</td>
<td>I've lost my watch. I've looked everywhere for it. (= I've looked in all places)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(things)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>everywhere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(places)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  Use a *singular verb* after *everybody/everyone/everything*:
  - Everybody has problems. *(not 'Everybody have')*
74.1 Complete the sentences. Use every + one of these words:

day  room  student  time  word

1. Every student in the class passed the examination.
2. My job is very boring. is the same.
3. in the hotel has a private bathroom.
4. Kay is a good tennis player. When we play, she wins
5. ‘Did you understand what she said?’ ‘Yes,

74.2 Put in every or all.

1. Yesterday it rained all day.
2. Bill watches TV evening.
3. Barbara gets up at 6.30 morning.
4. I was ill yesterday, so I stayed in bed day.
5. I buy a newspaper day but I don’t always read it.
6. ‘How often do you go skiing?’ year, usually in March.’
7. ‘Were you at home at 10 o’clock yesterday?’ ‘Yes, I was at home morning. I went out after lunch.’
8. The weather was nice last Sunday, so we sat in the garden afternoon.
9. We didn’t have a very good holiday. We went to the seaside for ten days and it rained day.
10. My sister likes cars. She buys a new one year.
11. I saw Jack at the party but he wasn’t very friendly. He didn’t speak to me evening.
12. They go away on holiday for two or three weeks summer.

74.3 Put in everybody (or everyone)/everything/everywhere.

1. Everybody needs friends.
2. Joy knows about computers.
3. I like the people here. is very friendly.
4. It’s a nice hotel. It’s comfortable and is clean.
5. Ken never uses his car. He goes by motor-bike.
6. Let’s have dinner. is hungry.
7. Their house is full of books. There are books
8. You’re right. you say is true.

74.4 Complete the answers to these questions. Use everybody.

1. Do you know George?
   Yes, everybody knows George.
2. Are you tired today?
   Yes, today.
3. Do you like Mary?
   Yes, today.
4. Are you going to the party?
   Yes, today.
5. Have you seen the film?
   Yes, today.
6. Were you surprised?
   Yes, today.
UNIT 75  all  most  some  no/none  any

all  most  some  no/none/not + any  any

- All big cities have the same problems.
- Most people like Jack.
- I like some classical music but not all.
- There are no buses on Sundays.
  or There aren't any buses on Sundays.

Don't use of in these sentences:
- Most children like playing. (not 'Most of children')
- Some birds cannot fly. (not 'Some of birds')

most of the ... /some of my ... /none of these ... etc.

most  some  none  any of the ... this /that ... these /those ... my /your ... etc.

- Most of my friends live in London.
- Some of this money is yours.
- Have you read any of these books?
- None of the students passed the examination.
- I don't know any of those people.

Remember:
most children  but  most of the children
some people  but  some of these people
no friends  but  none of my friends

Compare:
- Most children like playing. (= most children in general)
  but  Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.

We usually say all of the ... /all of my ... etc. (without of):
- All the students failed the exam.
- She has lived in London all her life.

all of it /most of them /some of us etc.

all  most  some  none  any of it  them  us  you

- You can have some of this cake but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?
  B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- Some of us are going out tonight. Would you like to come with us?
- He's got a lot of books but he hasn't read any of them.
UNIT 75  Exercises

75.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (some/most etc.). Sometimes you need of (some of/most of etc.).

1. Most people like Jack. (most)
2. Some of this money is yours. (some)
3. People are stupid. (some)
4. The shops in the city centre close at 5.30. (most)
5. You can change money in banks. (most)
6. I don't like the pictures in the living-room. (any)
7. He's lost his money. (all)
8. My friends are married. (none)
9. Do you know the people in this photograph? (any)
10. Birds can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed the film but I didn't like the ending. (most)
12. Sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can't find anywhere to stay. The hotels are full. (all)
14. You must have this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained the time. (most)

75.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use all/most/some/none of them.

1. How many of the people are women? Most of them.
2. How many of the boxes are on the table? ....
3. How many of the men are wearing hats? ....
4. How many of the windows are open? ....
5. How many of the people are standing? ....
6. How many of the hotel rooms have a balcony? ....

75.3 Answer these questions. Use the word in brackets (all/most/some/none) + of it/ of them.

2. Are your friends going to the party? (most) ....
3. How many of those books have you read? (all) ....
4. How much of this money do you want? (all) ....
5. Were the questions in the test easy? (most) ....
6. Are the shops open tomorrow? (some) ....
7. How many of those people do you know? (none) ....
8. Did you understand the conversation? (most) ....
9. Have you seen these photographs? (some) ....
UNIT 76  
both  either  neither

We use both/either/neither to talk about two things or people:

- Rosemary has two children. Both are married. (= both children)
- A: Do you like classical music or pop music?
  B: Both. (= classical and pop)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have either. (= tea or coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?
  B: Neither. I want to stay at home. (neither = not the cinema or the theatre)

both/either/neither + noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>both  + plural</th>
<th>both  windows/books/children etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>either + singular</td>
<td>either window/book/child etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>neither window/book/child etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Ann has got two sisters and a brother. Both sisters are married.
- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
- I read two books but neither book was very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go either way.

both/either/neither of ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>both</th>
<th>of</th>
<th>the ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| either| those/these | my/your/Tom's etc. ...

- I like both (of) those pictures.
- Both (of) Ann's sisters are married.
- I haven't read either of these books.
- Neither of my parents is English.

You can say both the ... /both those ... /both my ... etc. (without of):
both of those pictures  or  both those pictures

both of them/neither of us etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>both</th>
<th>of</th>
<th>them</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>either</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Ann has got two sisters. Both of them are married.
- Tom and I didn't eat anything. Neither of us was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don't know either of them.
76.1 Put in both/either/neither.

1 Ann has got two sisters. .................. Both .............. sisters are married.
2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like ............. either .......... of them.
3 It was a very good football match. .................. teams played well.
4 It wasn't a good football match. .................. team played well.
5 'Is your friend English or American?' .................. She's Australian.
6 We went away for two days but the weather wasn't very good. It rained on .......... days.
7 'I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?' .............. It doesn't matter which one.
8 I invited Jack and Jill to my party but .................. of them came.
9 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' .................. I always walk.
10 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like .................. of them.'
11 'Do you work or are you a student?' .............. I've got a job but I study too.
12 Ann and I didn't know the time because .................. of us had a watch.

76.2 Write sentences for the pictures. Use Both ... and Neither ...

1 Both cups are empty.
2 ............................................. are open.
3 ............................................. wearing a hat.
4 ............................................. cameras.
5 ............................................. to the airport.
6 ............................................. is right.

76.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers to all the questions were the same. Write sentences with Both/Neither of them ...

1 Are you married? No No → 1 Neither of them is married.
2 How old are you? 21 21 → 2 Both of them are 21.
3 Are you a student? Yes Yes → 3 ...................... students
4 Have you got a car? No No → 4 ...................... a car
5 Where do you live? London London
6 Do you like fish? Yes Yes
7 Are you interested in politics? No No
8 Can you play the piano? No No
9 Do you smoke? Yes Yes
UNIT 77  
a lot  
much  
many

a lot of money  
much money  

a lot of books  
many books  

much + uncountable noun (► Unit 61):  
much money  
much food  
much time  
much coffee

many + plural noun:  
many books  
many shops  
many people  
many questions

a lot of + uncountable or plural noun:  
a lot of food  
a lot of coffee  

a lot of people  
a lot of shops

■ much / many are more usual in questions and negative sentences:

- Do you drink much coffee?  
- How much money have you got?  
- She hasn’t got much money.  
- A: Have you got any money?  
  B: I’ve got some but not much.  
- Diana spoke to me but she didn’t say much.

- Do you know many people?  
- How many photographs did you take?  
- He hasn’t got many friends.  
- A: Did you take any photographs?  
  B: I took some but not many.

■ a lot (of) is more usual in positive sentences:

- I drink a lot of coffee.  
- They haven’t got much money but they’ve got a lot of friends.  
- There aren’t many hotels in the town but there are a lot of restaurants.

You can use a lot without a noun. Compare:

- He ate a lot of food. (a lot of + noun)  
  but  He ate a lot. (not ‘a lot of’)

Note that we say:

- There is a lot of food / money / coffee etc. (singular verb)  
  but  There are a lot of trees / shops / people etc. (plural verb)  
- A lot of people speak English. (not ‘A lot of people speaks’)

■ Sometimes much or a lot = often:

- ‘Do you watch TV much?’ ‘No, not much.’ (= not often)  
- We like films, so we go to the cinema a lot.
UNIT 77  Exercises

77.1 Answer the questions with *I've got some but not much/many.*

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Have you got any money?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Have you got any coffee?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Have you got any books?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Have you got any cigarettes?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Have you got any cheese?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Have you got any friends?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I've got some but not much.

77.2 Write questions with *How much ...?* or *How many ...?*

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I took some photographs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I bought some stamps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I lost some money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I drank some water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>I made some mistakes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>I wrote some letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>I bought some food.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>I invited some people.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How many photographs did you take ?
How did you buy ?
How did you buy ?
How did you buy ?
How did you buy ?
How did you buy ?
How did you buy ?
How did you buy ?

77.3 Put in a *lot/a lot of/much/many.*

1 Do you drink much tea?
2 I like reading. I've got a lot of books.
3 There isn't milk in the fridge.
4 It costs money to travel round the world.
5 Please be quick! I haven't got time.
6 How foreign languages can you speak?
7 They didn't ask me questions.
8 There was food at the party but I didn't eat.
9 We saw interesting things in the museum.
10 George knows about economics.
11 We went on a cheap holiday. It didn't cost.
12 'Did you enjoy the party?' 'No, not .'
13 Most of the town is modern – there aren't old buildings.
14 Most people in the town have jobs – there isn't unemployment.

77.4 Write the questions and answers. Use *much* and *a lot.*

1 (go to the cinema)
Do you go to the cinema much?

2 (watch TV)
Do you watch TV much?

3 (go swimming)
Do you go swimming much?

4 (play tennis)

5 (travel)

6 (use the phone)
UNIT 78 (a) little (a) few

(a) little + uncountable noun:
(a) little water  (a) little money
(a) little time  (a) little soup

(a) few + plural noun:
(a) few books  (a) few questions
(a) few people  (a) few days

a little = some but not much:
- She didn't eat anything but she drank a little water.
- I speak a little Spanish. (= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak Spanish?  
  B: A little.

a few = some but not many:
- Last night I wrote a few letters.
- We're going away for a few days.
- I speak a few words of Spanish.
- A: Have you got any cigarettes?  
  B: A few. Do you want one?

× little (without a) = nearly no ... or nearly nothing:
- There was little food in the fridge.  
  It was nearly empty.

× few (without a) = nearly no ....
- There were few people in the park. It was nearly empty.

You can say very little:
- She's very thin because she eats very little. (= nearly nothing)

You can say very few:
- Her English is very good. She makes very few mistakes.

little and a little:
× little is a positive idea:
- They have a little money so they're not poor. (= some but not much money)

× little is a negative idea:
- They have little money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

few and a few:
× few is a positive idea:
- I've got a few friends, so I'm not lonely. (= some but not many friends)

× few is a negative idea:
- I'm sad and lonely. I've got few friends. (= nearly no friends)

I've got a little money.  I've got little money.

I've got a few friends.  I've got few friends.
UNIT 78  Exercises

78.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.

1 Have you got any money?  A little.  5 Have we got any petrol?
2 Have you got any stamps?       6 Does he speak English?
3 Do you want any sugar?         7 Do you know many people?
4 Did he ask any questions?      8 Would you like some soup?

78.2 Put in a little or a few + one of these words:

air chairs days friends houses letters milk Russian
times

1 Yesterday evening I wrote a few letters to my family and friends.
2 Can I have .................................. in my coffee, please?
3 ‘When did John go away?’ ‘.............................. ago.’
4 ‘Do you speak any foreign languages?’ ‘Yes, Italian and .............................................’
5 ‘Are you going out alone?’ ‘No, I’m going with ..........................................
6 ‘Have you ever been to Rome?’ ‘Oh, yes. ............................................’
7 I live in a very small village. There is a church, a shop and ...........................................
    — that’s all.
8 I’m going out for a walk. I need .................................................. fresh ..................................
9 There wasn’t much furniture in the room — just a table and ..........................................

78.3 Complete the sentences. Use very little/very few + one of these words:

coffee hotels mistakes rain tables time

1 Her English is very good. She makes very few mistakes.
2 I drink ....................................... I don't like it.
3 In summer the weather is very dry. There is ..........................................................
4 It’s difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are ..........................................
5 We must hurry. We’ve got ..........................................
6 It’s a small restaurant. There are ..........................................................

78.4 Put in little or a little/few or a few.

1 There was .................................... food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.
2 ‘When did you see Sarah?’ ‘............................... days ago.’
3 He’s very lazy. He does .............................................. work.
4 They’re not rich but they’ve got .............................................. money — enough to live.
5 Last night I went to a restaurant with ........................................... friends.
6 The TV service is not very good. There are ............................................. good programmes.
7 I can’t decide now — I need ............................................. time to think about it.
8 Nearly everybody has a job. There is ............................................. unemployment.
9 He’s not well-known. ............................................. people have heard of him.
UNIT 79  big/tired/beautiful etc. (adjectives)

- adjective + noun (nice day/blue eyes etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It's a nice</td>
<td>day today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann has got</td>
<td>eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's a very</td>
<td>church in this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>village.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you like</td>
<td>food?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>languages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't speak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any foreign</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There are some</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>yellow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flowers</td>
<td>in the garden.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The adjective is before the noun:
- They live in a modern house. (not 'a house modern')

The endings of adjectives do not change:
a different place different places (not 'differents')

- be (am/is/are/was/were etc.) + adjective:

- The weather is nice today.
- Those flowers are very beautiful.
- A: Can you close the window, please?
  B: Why? Are you cold?
- The film wasn't very good. It was boring.
- Please be quiet. I'm reading.

get + adjective ➤ Unit 51

- look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective:

- You look tired. 'Yes, I feel tired too.'
- George told me about his new job. It sounds interesting.
- Don't cook that meat. It doesn't smell good.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He</th>
<th>feels</th>
<th>looks</th>
<th>tired.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>look</td>
<td>sound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>smells</td>
<td>tastes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 79  Exercises

79.1 The words in the box are adjectives (black/foreign etc.) or nouns (air/job etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>air</th>
<th>dangerous</th>
<th>fresh</th>
<th>interesting</th>
<th>languages</th>
<th>person</th>
<th>serious</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>black</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clouds</td>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>job</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>photograph</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>foreign</td>
<td>hotels</td>
<td>knife</td>
<td>old</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Jack doesn't speak any .......... foreign Languages ..........  
2. Look at those ................................ in the sky! It's going to rain.  
3. She works very hard and she's very tired. She needs a ........................................  
4. I enjoy talking to her. She's an ........................................  
5. Fire-fighting is a ........................................  
6. Can you open the window? We need some ........................................  
7. This is an ........................................ of Tom — he looks very different now.  
8. I've got a ........................................ . I hope you can help me.  
9. I need a ........................................ to cut these onions.  
10. They've got a lot of money — they always stay at ........................................  

79.2 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:

look(s)  sound(s)  feel(s)  smell(s)  taste(s) + ill  awful  nice  new  surprised  happy

1. You ........................................ sound happy  
2. It ........................................  
3. I ........................................  
4. You ........................................  
5. They ........................................  
6. It ........................................  

79.3 In these conversations you don't agree with Alex. Use the word in brackets ( )

1. You sound happy. Do I? (feel) I ........................................ don't feel happy.  
2. He's American. Is he? (sound) He ........................................ doesn't  
3. She's very rich. Is she? (look) She ........................................  
4. You look cold. Do I? (feel) I ........................................  
5. I'm English. Are you? (sound) You ........................................  
6. They are very friendly. Are they? (look) They ........................................  
7. Your meal looks good. Does it? (taste) It ........................................  

Q. You?
Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.

*adjective + -ly → adverb:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>quick</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>sudden</th>
<th>careful</th>
<th>heavy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adverb</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>heavily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Spelling ➤ Appendix 4(4.2):*

easy → easily  
heavy → heavily

Adverbs tell you how something happens or how somebody does something:
- The train stopped suddenly.
- I opened the door slowly.
- Please listen carefully.
- I understand you perfectly.

Compare: *adjective* (➤ Unit 79)  
- Sue is very quiet.  
  but  
- Be careful!
- It was a bad game.

*adverb*  
Sue speaks very quietly. (not 'speaks very quiet')
Listen carefully! (not 'listen careful')
Our team played badly.

**fast**  
**hard**  
**late**  
**early**  
These words are adjectives and adverbs:
- Ben is a fast runner.
- Her job is very hard.
- The bus was late/early.

**good** (adjective) → **well** (adverb):
- Her English is very good.
- It was a good game.

She speaks English very well. (not 'speaks English very good')
Our team played well.

But **well** is also an adjective (= not ill, in good health):
- 'How are you?'  
  'I'm very well, thank you. And you?'
80.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with one of these adverbs:
badly  dangerously  heavily  fast  angrily  quietly

1. It's raining ______.
2. He sings very ______.
3. They came in ______.
4. She shouted at me ______.
5. He was driving ______.
6. She can run very ______.

80.2 Choose a verb + adverb from the box to complete these sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>come</th>
<th>explain</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>listen</th>
<th>sleep</th>
<th>think</th>
<th>win</th>
<th>work</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>clearly</td>
<td>easily</td>
<td>well</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>hard</td>
<td>well</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I'm going to say something very important, so please ______ to me ______.
2. John! I need your help. !
3. I've met him but I don't ______ him very ______.
4. They ______. At the end of the day they're always tired.
5. I'm tired this morning. I didn't ______ last night.
6. You're a much better tennis player than me. When we play, you always ______ before you answer the question.
7. ______ things very ______.

80.3 Choose the right word.

1. I opened the door ______. (slowly is right)
2. Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
3. Bill is a careful/carefully driver. He drives careful/carefully.
4. Can you please repeat that slow/slowly?
5. Come on, George! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
6. The party was very good/well. I enjoyed it very much.
7. Tom didn't do very good/well in his examination.
8. Jane is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
9. ‘Where's Diane?’ ‘She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly.’
10. I met them a long time ago, so I don't remember them very good/well.
11. My brother isn't very good/well at the moment.
12. Don't eat your dinner so quick/quickly. It's not good for you.
13. Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?
14. I don't want to work for that company. They pay their workers very bad/badly.
15. Please be quiet/quietly. I'm reading.
UNIT 81  old/older expensive/more expensive

Older/heavier/more expensive are comparative forms.
The comparative form is -er (older) or more ... (more expensive).

short adjectives (1 syllable) old/cheap/nice etc. → -er

old → older  slow → slower  cheap → cheaper
nice → nicer  late → later  big → bigger

Spelling  ► Appendix 4(4.4):  big → bigger  hot → hotter  thin → thinner
- Rome is old but Athens is older. (not ‘more old’)
- Is it cheaper to go by car or by train? (not ‘more cheap’)
- Sue wants to buy a bigger car.
- This coat is okay but I think the other one is nicer.

but good/well → better  bad → worse  far → further
- The weather wasn’t very good yesterday but it’s better today.
- Which is worse — a headache or toothache?
- ‘Do you feel better today?’ ‘No, I feel worse.’
- ‘How far is the station? A mile?’ ‘No, further. About two miles.’

-y adjectives (2 syllables) easy/heavy etc. → -ier

easy → easier  heavy → heavier  early → earlier
- Don’t send a letter. It’s easier to phone me. (not ‘more easy’)
- The bag is heavy but the suitcase is heavier.

long adjectives (2/3/4 syllables) modern (= MOD-ERN)/expensive (= EX-PENS-IVE) etc. → more ...

modern → more modern  polite → more polite  tired → more tired
expensive → more expensive  interesting → more interesting

- I don’t like this house. I prefer more modern houses. (not ‘moderner’)
- Don’t talk about your job. Let’s talk about something more interesting.
- Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

► Unit 82  older than ...  more expensive than ...
UNIT 81 Exercises

81.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older/more modern etc.).

1. heavy  .......................................................... heavier
2. big .................................................................
3. slow .................................................................
4. expensive ........................................................
5. high .................................................................
6. dangerous .........................................................

81.2 Write the comparative (older/more modern etc.).

1. old  ................................................................. older
2. strong .............................................................
3. happy ..............................................................
4. careful ............................................................
5. important ........................................................
6. bad .................................................................
7. difficult ...........................................................
8. large ...............................................................
9. far .................................................................
10. serious ...........................................................
11. crowded ........................................................
12. pretty ............................................................

81.3 Write the opposite.

1. younger ...........................................................
2. colder ..............................................................
3. cheaper ...........................................................
4. better .............................................................
5. nearer .............................................................
6. easier .............................................................

81.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1. Sue's car isn't very big. She wants a bigger car.
2. This house isn't very modern. I prefer more modern houses.
3. You're not very tall. Your brother is
4. Bill doesn't work very hard. I work
5. My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is
6. Jill's idea wasn't very good. My idea was
7. These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are
8. My case isn't very heavy. Your case is
9. I'm not very interested in art. I'm in history.
10. It isn't very warm today. It was yesterday.
11. These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted
12. Britain isn't very big. France is
13. London isn't very beautiful. Paris is
14. This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a one?
15. People today aren't very polite. In the past they were
UNIT 82 older than ... more expensive than ...

► Unit 81 old/older expensive/more expensive

She's taller than him. The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

■ We use than after comparatives (older than ... more expensive than ... etc.):
  - Athens is older than Rome.
  - Are oranges more expensive than apples?
  - It's easier to phone than to write a letter.
  - 'How are you today?' 'Not bad. Better than yesterday.'
  - Last night the restaurant was more crowded than usual.

■ We say ... than me/than him/than her/than us/than them:
  - I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.
  - You are a better singer than me. or You are a better singer than I am.
  - I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.

■ more/less than ...
  - A: How much did your shoes cost? £25?
    B: No, more than that. (= more than £25)
  - The film was very short - less than an hour.
  - They've got more money than they need.
  - You go out more than me. (= more often than me)

■ a bit/much + older/more expensive etc.

Box A is a bit bigger than Box B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a bit/much</th>
<th>bigger older better more difficult more expensive</th>
<th>than ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Box C is much bigger than Box D.
  - Canada is much bigger than France.
  - Jill is a bit older than Gary - she's 25 and he's 24\(\frac{1}{2}\).
  - A car is much more expensive than a motor-bike.
82.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.

1 I'm 26.
2 I'm not a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
4 I start work at 8 o'clock.
5 I don't work very hard.
6 I haven't got much money.
7 I'm a very good driver.
8 I'm not very friendly.
9 I'm not a very good dancer.
10 I'm very intelligent.
11 I speak French very well.
12 I don't go to the cinema very much.

1 I'm 24.
2 I'm a very good swimmer.
3 I'm 1 metre 66 tall.
4 I start work at 8.30.
5 I work very hard.
6 I've got a lot of money.
7 I'm not a very good driver.
8 I'm very friendly.
9 I'm a good dancer.
10 I'm not very intelligent.
11 I don't speak French very well.
12 I go to the cinema a lot.

1 Liz is older than Ben.
2 Ben is a better swimmer than Liz.
3 Liz is taller
4 Liz starts
5 Ben
6 Ben has got
7 Liz is a
8 Ben
9 Ben
10 Liz
11 Liz
12 Ben

82.2 Complete the sentences. Use than.

1 He isn't very tall. You're taller than him (or ... than he is).
2 She isn't very old. You're
3 I don't work very hard. You work
4 He doesn't smoke very much. You
5 I'm not a very good cook. You
6 We don't know many people. You
7 They haven't got much money. You've got
8 I can't run very fast. You can
9 She hasn't been here very long. You
10 I didn't get up very early. You
11 He isn't very interesting. You

82.3 Complete the sentences with a bit or much + a comparative (older/better etc.).

1 Jill is 25. Gary is 24. Jill is a bit older than Gary.
2 Jack's mother is 54. His father is 68. Jack's mother is older than his father.
3 My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96. My camera cost a bit more than yours.
4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel okay. I feel better today than yesterday.
5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was ten degrees. It's a bit warmer today than yesterday.
6 Ann is a fantastic tennis player. I'm not very good. Ann is a lot better than me.
UNIT 83  not as ... as

She's old but she's not as old as he is.

不 as ... as ...
- Rome is not as old as Athens. (= Athens is older)
- The Grand Hotel isn't as expensive as the Europa. (= the Europa is more expensive)
- I don't play tennis as often as you. (= you play more often)
- The weather is better than yesterday. It isn't as cold. (= as cold as yesterday)

不 as much as ... / not as many as ... (much/many ► Unit 77):
- I haven't got as much money as you. (= you've got more money)
- I don't know as many people as you. (= you know more people)
- I don't go out as much as you. (= you go out more)

Compare not as ... as and than:
- Rome is not as old as Athens.
  Athens is older than Rome. (not 'older as Rome')
- Tennis isn't as popular as football.
  Football is more popular than tennis.
- I don't go out as much as you.
  You go out more than me.

We say ... as me/as him/as her etc.:
- She's not as old as him. or She's not as old as he is.
- You haven't got as much money as me. or You haven't got as much money as I have.

Note that we say the same as ...:
- My hair is the same colour as yours. (not 'the same like')
- I arrived at the same time as Tom.
UNIT 83  Exercises

83.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.

1. A is bigger than C but not as big as B.
2. A is ............................................. B but not ............................................. C.
3. C is ............................................. A but .............................................
4. A is ............................................. but .............................................
5. B has got .............................................
6. C works .............................................

83.2 Write sentences with as ... as ...

1. Athens is older than Rome.  Rome isn’t as old as Athens.
2. My room is bigger than yours.  Your room isn’t 
3. You got up earlier than me.  I didn’t 
4. We played better than them.  They didn’t 
5. I’ve been here longer than you.  You haven’t 

83.3 Put in as or than.

1. Athens is older than Rome.  
2. I don’t watch TV as much as you.  
3. You eat more than me.  
4. I feel better than I felt yesterday.  
5. Jim isn’t as clever as he thinks.  
6. Belgium is smaller than Switzerland.  
7. Brazil isn’t as big as Canada.  
8. I can’t wait longer than an hour.  

83.4 Read about the three people and complete the sentences with the same ... as ... Use the word in brackets ( ).

**Julia**

I’m 22.  
I live in Hill Street.  
I got up at 7.15.  
I haven’t got a car.

**Andrew**

I’m 24.  
I live in Baker Street.  
I got up at 7.15.  
My car is green.

**Caroline**

I’m 24.  
I live in Hill Street.  
I got up at 7.45.  
My car is green.

1. **(age)**  
   Andrew is the same age as Caroline.

2. **(street)**  
   Julia lives ............................................. Caroline.

3. **(time)**  
   Julia got up .............................................

4. **(colour)**  
   Andrew’s .............................................
UNIT 84  the oldest  the most expensive

Box A is **bigger than** box H.
Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.
Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.
The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the town.
The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the town.

Bigger/older/more expensive etc. are **comparative** forms (Unit 81).
Biggest/oldest/most expensive etc. are **superlative** forms.

- **The superlative form is** -est (oldest) or most ... (most expensive):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>short adjectives (old/cheap/nice etc.) → the -est:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>old → the oldest   cheap → the cheapest   nice → the nicest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but good → the best   bad → the worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spelling: Appendix 4(4.4): big → the biggest   hot → the hottest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y adjectives (easy/heavy etc.) → the -iest:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy → the easiest   heavy → the heaviest   pretty → the prettiest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>long adjectives (modern/expensive/interesting etc.) → the most ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>modern → the most modern   interesting → the most interesting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Don't forget the. We say: the oldest .../the most expensive ... etc.:
  - The church is very old. It's the **oldest** building in the town.
  (= it is older than all the other buildings)
  - What is the **longest** river in the world?
  - Money is important but it isn't the **most important** thing in life.
  - Excuse me, where is the **nearest** bank?

- You can use the **oldest/the best/the most** expensive etc. without a noun:
  - Ken is a good tennis player. I think he is the **best** in the club.
  (the best = the best player)

- You can use the superlative + I've ever .../you've ever ... (Unit 16):
  - It was a very bad film — the **worst** film I've ever seen.
  - What is the **most unusual** thing you've ever done?
84.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).

1. (big/small)
   (A/D) A is bigger than D.
   (A) A is the biggest.
   (B) B is the smallest.
   (long/short)
   (C/A) C is ........................................ A.
   (D) D is ........................................ B.
   (young/old)
   (D/C) D ........................................ B.
   (C) ........................................ (A)
   (expensive/cheap)
   (D/A) ........................................ (A)
   (C) ........................................ (A)
   (good/bad)
   (A/C) ........................................ (A)
   (A) ........................................ (D)

84.2 Write sentences with a superlative (the longest etc.).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sydney</th>
<th>Brazil</th>
<th>Everest</th>
<th>Jupiter</th>
<th>Alaska</th>
<th>large</th>
<th>long</th>
<th>high</th>
<th>country</th>
<th>planet</th>
<th>city</th>
<th>state</th>
<th>river</th>
<th>mountain</th>
<th>the USA</th>
<th>the solar system</th>
<th>Africa</th>
<th>South America</th>
<th>the world</th>
<th>Australia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Sydney is the largest city in Australia.
2. Everest ........................................
3. ........................................
4. ........................................
5. ........................................
6. ........................................

84.3 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (the oldest etc.).

1. This building is very old. It's the oldest building ........................................ in the town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was ........................................ of my life.
3. It's a very good film. It's ........................................ I've ever seen.
4. She's a very popular singer. She's ........................................ in our country.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was ........................................ I've ever made.
6. It's a very pretty village. It's ........................................ I've ever seen.
7. It was a very cold day. It was ........................................ of the year.
8. He's a very interesting person. He's ........................................ I've ever met.
Alice wants to buy a sandwich. A sandwich is 80 pence. Alice has got only 60 pence. So she can’t buy a sandwich because she hasn’t got enough money.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(not) enough + noun (enough money/enough houses etc.):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- A: Is there enough sugar in your coffee?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: Yes, thank you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- We wanted to play football but we didn’t have enough players.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Why don’t you buy a car? You’ve got enough money. (not ‘money enough’)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(not) enough without a noun:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- I’ve got some money, but not enough to buy a car. (= I need more money to buy a car.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- ‘Would you like some more to eat?’ ‘No, thanks, I’ve had enough.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- You are always at home. You don’t go out enough.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective + enough (go enough/warm enough etc.):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He isn’t tall enough (to reach the shelf).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- A: Shall we go swimming?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: No, it’s not warm enough. (not ‘enough warm’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Don’t buy that coat. It’s nice but it isn’t long enough. (= it’s too short)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remember</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enough + noun: enough money enough time enough people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but adjective + enough: good enough old enough loud enough</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>We say</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enough for somebody/something to do something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- This pullover isn’t big enough for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- I haven’t got enough money for a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but I haven’t got enough money to buy a car. (not ‘for buy a car’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Is your English good enough to have a conversation?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- There weren’t enough chairs for everybody to sit down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
85.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words:

- big
- chairs
- long
- money
- paint
- strong
- tall
- wind

1. She hasn't got **enough** money.
2. He isn't tall enough.
3. She hasn't got **enough**
4. The car isn't **enough**
5. His legs aren't
6. There aren't
7. There isn't
8. He isn't

85.2 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words:

- big
- clothes
- eat
- fruit
- loud
- old
- practise
- sugar
- time
- tired

1. 'Is there **enough** sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
3. He can leave school if he wants to, he's __________
4. Did you have __________ to answer all the questions in the exam?
5. This house isn't __________ for a large family.
6. She's very thin. She doesn't __________
7. You don't eat __________. You should eat more - it's good for you.
8. It's late but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not __________
9. He's got __________. He doesn't need any new ones.
10. She's not a very good tennis player because she doesn't __________

85.3 Complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words + **to**:

- bread
- money
- money
- old
- warm
- well

1. I'm not going to buy a car. I haven't got **enough** money to buy a car.
2. They're not getting married. They're not __________
3. Don't sit in the garden. It isn't __________ the garden.
4. We can't make sandwiches. We haven't got __________
5. They didn't go on holiday. They didn't have __________
6. Don't go to work today. You aren't __________
UNIT 86  too

There is too much sugar in it. The shoes are too big for him.

■ too much/too many = more than you want, more than is good:
  - I don’t like the weather here. There is too much rain. (= more rain than is good)
  - Let’s go to another restaurant. There are too many people here.
  - She studies all the time. I think she studies too much.

much/many ➤ Unit 77

■ too + adjective (too big/too loud etc.):
  - Please turn the radio down. It’s too loud. (= louder than I want)
  - I can’t work. I’m too tired.

■ too and not enough (enough ➤ Unit 85):

- There’s too much sugar in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- I don’t feel very well. I ate too much.

- The radio is too loud. Can you turn it down, please?
- The hat is too big for her.
- There’s not enough sugar in my coffee. (= I want more sugar)
- You’re very thin. You don’t eat enough.
- The radio isn’t loud enough. Can you turn it up, please?
- The hat isn’t big enough for her. (= it’s too small for her)

■ We say: too ... for somebody/something to do something:
  - These shoes are too big for me.
  - It’s a small house — too small for a large family.
  - It’s too cold to go out. (not ‘for go out’)
  - I’m too tired to work.
  - She speaks too fast for me to understand her.
86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **too** + one of these words:

```
big crowded fast high hot loud
```

1. The radio is **too loud**.
2. The net is
3. It's
4. She's driving
5. The ball is
6. The restaurant is

86.2 Complete the sentences. Use **too much/too many** or **enough**.

1. You're very thin. You don't eat **enough**.
2. I don't like the weather here. There's **too much** rain.
3. I can't wait for them. I haven't got **time**.
4. 'Did you have **enough** to eat?' ‘Yes, thank you.’
5. You drink **coffee**. It's not good for you.
6. You don't eat **fruit**. You should eat more.
7. There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were **people**.

86.3 Complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough** + one of these words:

```
big busy expensive far loud loud sharp warm
```

1. Please turn the radio down. It's **too loud**.
2. Can you turn up the radio, please? It isn't **loud enough**.
3. I don't want to walk home. It's
4. Don't buy anything in that shop. It
5. You can't put all your things in this bag. It
6. We didn't go to the beach. It
7. I can't talk to you now. I
8. I can't cut anything with this knife. It

86.4 Complete the sentences. Use **too** (+ adjective) **to** (do something).

1. I'm not going out. (cold) It's **too cold to go out**.
2. I'm not going to bed. (early) It's too early
3. Don't wear a coat. (warm) It's too
4. They're not getting married. (young) They're
5. Nobody goes out at night. (dangerous) It's
6. Don't phone Ann now. (late) It's
7. They didn't say anything. (surprised) They were


UNIT 87  word order (1)

verb + object

Jill reads a newspaper every day.

subject  verb  object

The verb (reads) and the object (a newspaper) are usually together:

- Jill reads a newspaper every day.

(not 'Jill reads every day a newspaper'.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject verb</th>
<th>+ object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You speak English</td>
<td>very well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I watched television</td>
<td>all evening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We invited a lot of people</td>
<td>to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My brother phoned the police</td>
<td>immediately.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I like Italian food very much. (not 'I like very much Italian food.')
- Ann borrowed some money from the bank. (not 'Ann borrowed from the bank some money.')
- I opened the door very quietly. (not 'I opened very quietly the door.')
- George usually wears a black hat. (not 'George wears usually a black hat.')
- Why do you always make the same mistake? (not 'Why do you make always the same mistake?')

place and time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>place (where?)</th>
<th>time (when? how long? how often?)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>George walks to work</td>
<td>every morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We arrived at the airport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you going to the party</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They've lived in the same house</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I usually go to bed</td>
<td>early.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

place is usually before time:

- They go to school every day. (not 'They go every day to school.')
- I went to the bank yesterday afternoon. (not 'I went yesterday afternoon to the bank.')
- Jack's brother has been in hospital since June. (not '... since June in hospital.')
UNIT 87  Exercises

87.1 Put the words in the right order.

1 (a newspaper/reads/every day/Jill)  Jill reads a newspaper every day.
2 (football/don't like/very much/I)  I
3 (lost/I/my watch/last week)  
4 (Tom/the letter/slowly/read)  
5 (London/do you know/very well?)  ?
6 (ate/we/very quickly/our dinner)  ?
7 (did you buy/in England/that jacket?)  
8 (I/very well/French/don't speak)  
9 (crossed/the street/they/carefully)  
10 (from my brother/borrowed/£50/I)  
11 (we/enjoyed/very much/the party)  
12 (passed/Ann/easily/the examination)  
13 (every day/do/the same thing/we)  
14 (I/this picture/don't like/very much)  
15 (in her bag/the money/put/the woman)  ?
16 (did you watch/on television/the news?)  ?
17 (my plan/carefully/1/explained)  
18 (she/smokes/every day/ten cigarettes)  
19 (a lot of housework/did/I/yesterday)  
20 (we/at the concert/some friends/met)  
21 (you/the same clothes/wear/every day)  
22 (I/want to speak/fluently/English)  

87.2 Put the words in the right order.

1 (to work/every morning/walks/George)  George walks to work every morning.
2 (at the party/we/early/arrived)  We  
3 (didn't go/yesterday/I/to work)  ?
4 (to work/tomorrow/are you going?)  
5 (they/since 1984/here/have lived)  
6 (will you be/this evening/at home?)  ?
7 (next week/they/to London/are going)  ?
8 (to the cinema/last night/did you go?)  ?
9 (on Monday/here/will they be?)  ?
10 (goes/every year/to Italy/Jill)  
11 (in London/Alice/in 1951/was born)  
12 (I/in bed/this morning/my breakfast/had)  

13 (in October/Barbara/to university/is going)  
14 (many times/my parents/have been/to the United States)  
15 (a beautiful bird/this morning/I/in the garden/saw)  
16 (my umbrella/last night/I think I left/in the restaurant)  

These words (always/usually etc.) are often with the verb in the middle of a sentence:
- My brother never speaks to me.
- She’s always late.
- Do you often eat in restaurants?
- I sometimes eat too much. (or Sometimes I eat too much.)
- I don’t want to go to the cinema. I’ve already seen the film.
- I’ve got three sisters. They’re all married.

always/never etc. go before the verb:

- I always go to work by car. (not ‘I go always’)
- Ann often plays tennis.
- I sometimes feel sad.
- They usually have dinner at 7 o’clock.
- We rarely (or seldom) watch television.
- Tom is a good footballer. He also plays tennis and volleyball.
  (not ‘He plays also tennis …’)
- I’ve got three sisters. They all live in London.

but always/never etc. go after am/is/are/was/were:

- I am never ill. (not ‘I never am ill.’)
- They are usually at home in the evenings.
- In winter it is often very cold here.
- When I was a child, I was always late for school.
- ‘Where’s George?’ ‘He’s still in bed.’
- I’ve got two brothers. They’re both doctors.

always/never etc. go between two verbs (have ... been/can ... find etc.):

- I will always remember you.
- It doesn’t often rain here.
- Do you usually go home by car?
- I can never find my keys.
- Have you ever been to Rome?
- A: Where’s Linda?
  B: She’s just gone out. (she’s = she has)
  A: Where are your friends?
  B: They’ve all gone to the cinema.
UNIT 88  Exercises

88.1 Look at Sam’s answers to the questions and write sentences with often/never etc.

1. Do you ever play tennis? Yes, often.
2. Do you ever smoke? Yes, sometimes.
3. Are you ever ill? Yes, often.
4. Do you eat fish? No, never.
5. Are you ever late for work? Yes, always.

Sam  often  plays  tennis.
He  ........................................
He  ........................................
He  ........................................
He  ........................................
letters.

88.2 Write these sentences again with the words in brackets ( ).

1. My brother speaks to me. (never) My brother never speaks to me.
2. Susan is polite. (always) Susan ........................................
3. I finish work at half past five. (usually) I ........................................
4. Jill has started a new job. (just) Jill ........................................
5. I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) ........................................
6. The bus isn’t late. (usually) ........................................
7. I don’t eat meat. (often) ........................................
8. I will forget what you said. (never) ........................................
9. Have you broken your leg? (ever) ........................................
10. Do you work in the same place? (still) ........................................
11. They stay in the same hotel. (always) ........................................
12. Diane doesn’t work on Saturdays. (usually) ........................................
13. I can remember his name. (never) ........................................
14. What do you have for breakfast? (usually) ........................................
15. When I arrived, Jan was there. (already) When I arrived, ........................................

88.3 Write sentences with also. Use the words in brackets ( ).

1. Do you play football? (tennis) Yes, and I also play tennis.
2. Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I ........................................
3. Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and ........................................
4. Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes, ........................................
5. Did you buy any clothes? (some books) ........................................

88.4 Write sentences with both and all.

I live in London.
I like football.
I’m a student.
I’ve got a car.

I’m married, I was born in England,
I live in New York.

1. They both live in London.
2. They ........................................ football.
3. ........................................ students.
4. ........................................ cars.
5. They ........................................ married.
7. ........................................
UNIT 89  still  yet

still

An hour ago it was raining.
The rain hasn't stopped.
It is still raining now.

still = something is the same as before:
- A: Does your daughter work?
  B: No, she's still at school. (= she was at school before and she's at school now)
  - I had a lot to eat but I'm still hungry.
  - 'Did you sell your car?' 'No, I've still got it.'
  - 'Do you still live in Paris?' 'No, I live in London now.'

yet

Fifteen minutes ago they were waiting for Bill to come.

They are still waiting for Bill. He hasn't come yet.

Yet = until now.
We use yet in negative sentences (He hasn't come yet.) and in questions (Has he come yet?)
Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:
- 'Where's Tom?' 'He isn't here yet.' (= He will be here but until now he hasn't come.)
- 'What are you doing this evening?' 'I don't know yet.' (= I will know later but I don't know at the moment.)
- 'Are you ready to go yet?' 'Not yet. Wait a moment.' (= I will be ready but I'm not ready at the moment.)

We often use the present perfect (I have done) + yet:
- 'What's in the newspaper today?' 'I don't know. I haven't read it yet.' (= I'm going to read it but I haven't read it until now.)
- 'Has it stopped raining yet?' 'No, it's still raining.'

Compare yet and still:
- She hasn't gone yet. = She's still here. (not 'She is yet here.')
- I haven't finished eating yet. = I'm still eating.
UNIT 89 Exercises

89.1 You meet Carol. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with still.

Carol – two years ago

1 I play the piano.
2 I smoke.
3 I'm a student.
4 I go to the cinema a lot.
5 I've got a motor-bike.
6 I play tennis.

1 Do you still play the piano?
2 Do you?
3 Are?
4 ?
5 ?
6 ?

89.2 Write questions with yet.

1 It was raining ten minutes ago. Perhaps it has stopped now. You ask: Has it stopped raining yet?
2 You are waiting for Ann to arrive. She wasn't here half an hour ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask: Ann?
3 You are waiting for me to finish reading the newspaper. Perhaps I have finished now. You ask: you?
4 We are going out together. You are waiting for me to get ready. Perhaps I am ready now. You ask: you?
5 Tom can't decide where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask: ?

89.3 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

1 before now (before) It was raining.
(still) It is still raining.
(yet) It hasn't stopped raining yet.

2 (before) They were (still) still (yet) The bus

3 (before) He was (still) a job (yet) yet.

4 (before) She (still) (yet)

5 (before) They (still) (yet)
UNIT 90  

Give me that book!  
Give it to me!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>give</th>
<th>lend</th>
<th>pass</th>
<th>send</th>
<th>show</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

After these verbs (*give*, *lend* etc.) there are two possible structures:

*(give) something to somebody*
- I gave the money to Jack.

*or (give) somebody something*
- I gave Jack the money.

*(give) something to somebody*
- That book is mine. **Give it to me!**
- This is your father's key. Can you **give it to him?**
- I **lent my car to a friend of mine.**
- 'Have you seen these photographs?' 'Yes, you **showed them to us.'**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(something)</th>
<th>to (somebody)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can you</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>showed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(give) somebody something*
- Give me that book! It's mine. (*not* 'Give to me that book!')
- Tom gave his mother some flowers. (*not* 'Tom gave to his mother some flowers.')

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(somebody)</th>
<th>(something)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom</td>
<td>gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don't forget to send</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can you pass</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you see Jack, can you give</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much money did you lend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare:
- I gave the book to Pat.
*but* I gave **Pat the book.** (*not* 'I gave to Pat the book.')

We prefer the first structure (*give something to somebody*) when the *thing* is *it* or *them*:
- I gave it to her. (*not usually* 'I gave her it.')
- Give them to your father. (*not usually* 'Give your father them.')
90.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want - an armchair, a TV set, some books, some cassettes, a radio and a lamp. He gave these things to different people. Look at the pictures and write a sentence for each thing.

1. He gave the armchair to his brother.
2. He gave ...........................................
3. He ............................................

90.2 You wanted to give presents to your friends. You thought about it and and you decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

1. I gave George a tennis-racket.
2. I gave Alice ...................................
3. I ............................................... 4 ............................................
4. ..............................................
5. ..............................................
6. ..............................................

90.3 Write questions beginning Can you ...? Use the verb in brackets ( ).

1. (you want the salt) (pass) Can you pass me the salt? ?
2. (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you lend ............................................. ?
3. (you want your coat) (give) Can you ........................................ my ........................................ ?
4. (Mary needs a bicycle) (lend) Can ........................................ Mary ........................................ ?
5. (Tom wants some information) (send) ............................................. me ........................................ ?
6. (you want to see the letter) (show) ........................................ me ........................................ ?
7. (they need £100) (lend) ........................................ ........................................ ?

90.4 Write questions beginning Can you give ...?

1. Do you want the book? Do you want this key? Do you want these keys? Do you want this knife? Do you want this money? Do you want these letters?

Yes, can you give it to me, please ... ?
Yes, can you ......................................... , please? Yes, can ........................................ ?
Yes, ............................................. ? Yes, ............................................. ?
Yes, ............................................. ?
### UNIT 91

**at 10.30** on Monday in April

- **at**
  - 8 o'clock
  - 10.30
  - midnight etc.
  - I start work **at 8 o'clock**.
  - The shops close **at 5.30 p.m.**

- **on**
  - Sunday(s)/Monday(s) etc.
  - 25 April/6 June etc.
  - New Year's Day etc.
  - Goodbye! See you **on Friday**.
  - I don't work **on Sundays**.
  - The concert is **on 22 November**.

- **in**
  - April/June etc.
  - 1985/1750 etc.
  - (the) summer/spring etc.
  - I'm going on holiday **in October**.
  - Jill left school **in 1984**.
  - The garden is lovely **in spring**.

*also*

- **at the weekend**
  - Are you going away **at the weekend**?

- **at night**
  - I can't sleep **at night**.

- **at Christmas/Easter**
  - In Britain children get presents **at Christmas**.
    - (but on Christmas **Day**)

- **at the end of**...
  - I'm going on holiday **at the end of October**.

- **at the moment**
  - Are you busy **at the moment**?

- **in the morning/in the afternoon/in the evening**
  - I always feel good **in the morning**.
  - Do you often go out **in the evening**?

*but*

- **on Monday morning/on Tuesday afternoon/on Friday evening/on Saturday night etc.**
  - I'm meeting Jill **on Monday morning**.
  - Are you doing anything **on Friday evening**?

- **in five minutes/in a few days/in six weeks/in two years etc.**

  - Hurry! The train leaves **in five minutes**.
    - (= it leaves five minutes from now)
  - Goodbye. I'll see you **in a few days**.
    - (= a few days from now)

*We do not use at/on/in before:*

- **this** ...
  - (this morning/this week etc.)

- **last** ...
  - (last August/last week etc.)

- **every** ...
  - (every day/every week etc.)

- **next** ...
  - (next Monday/next week etc.)

- They're going on holiday **next Monday**. (not 'on next Monday')
- Last summer we went to Scotland. (not 'In last summer')
UNIT 91  Exercises

91.1 Write at/on/in.

1 on........... 6 June  4 ........ 12.30 a.m.  7 ........ 24 September  10 ........ half past two
2 at........... 8 o'clock  5 ........ 1977  8 ........ Friday  11 ........ Christmas Day
3 .......... Wednesday  6 ........ September  9 ........ 1984  12 ........ winter

13 in .......... the evening  16 .......... Saturday night  19 .......... the weekend
14 .......... the morning  17 .......... night  20 .......... Tuesday afternoon
15 .......... Monday morning  18 .......... Christmas  21 .......... the end of my holiday

91.2 Write at/on/in.

1 Goodbye! See you on Friday.
2 Where were you on 28 February?
3 I got up at 8 o'clock this morning.
4 I like getting up early the morning.
5 My sister got married in May.
6 Diane and I first met on 1979.
7 Did you go out on Friday?
8 Did you go out on Friday evening?
9 Do you often go out on the evening?
10 Let's meet on 7.30 tomorrow evening.
11 I'm starting my new job on 3 June.

91.3 Write sentences with in ...

1 now
   17. 25 → 17. 30
   It's 17.25 now. The train leaves at 17.30.
   The train leaves in five minutes.

2 MONDAY → THURSDAY
   It's Monday today. I'll phone you on Thursday.
   I'll ..................................... days.

3 14 JUNE → 28 JUNE
   It's 14 June today. My exam is on 28 June.
   My ........................................

4
   It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.
   Tom ......................................

91.4 Write at/on/in if necessary. (Sometimes there is no preposition.)

1 I'm leaving on Saturday.
2 I'm leaving next Saturday.
3 I always feel tired the evening.
4 Will you be at home this evening?
5 We went to Scotland last summer.
6 What do you usually do the weekend?
7 She phones me every Sunday.
8 Can you play tennis next Sunday?
9 I'm afraid I can't come to the party Sunday.
10 We went to bed late last night.
11 I don't like going out alone night.
12 I won't be out very long. I'll be back ten minutes.
from ... to:  
- We lived in Canada from 1977 to 1985.  
- I work from Monday to Friday.

You can also say from ... until ...:  
- We lived in Canada from 1977 until 1985.

until + the end of a period:

until Friday until 1999 until 10.30 until I come back
- They’re going away tomorrow. They’ll be away until Friday.
- I went to bed early last night but I wasn’t tired. I read a book until 3 a.m.
- Wait here until I come back.

You can also say till (= until):
- Wait here till I come back.

Compare:
- ‘How long will you be away?’ ‘Until (or till) Monday.’
- ‘When are you coming back?’ ‘On Monday.’

since + the beginning of a period (from the past to now):
since Monday since 1958 since 2 o’clock since I arrived

We use since after the present perfect (have been/have done etc.):
- John is in hospital. He has been in hospital since Sunday. (= from Sunday to now)
- Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married since 1958. (= from 1958 to now)
- It has been raining since I got up.

Compare:
- We lived in Canada from 1977 to 1985.
- We lived in Canada until 1985.
- We have lived in England since 1985. (= from 1985 until now)

Use for (not since) + a period of time (three days/ten years etc.):
- John has been in hospital for three days. (not ‘since three days’)

for + a period of time:
for three days for ten years for ten minutes for a long time
- George stayed with us for three days.
- I’m going away for a few weeks.
- They’ve been married for ten years.

present perfect + for and since ► Units 17–18
92.1 Read the information about these people and complete the sentences. Use from ... to/until/since.

7 (Carol/a restaurant/1988→) Carol has worked 1988.
8 (Gerry/a teacher/1978–84) Gerry was a 1978–84.
9 (Gerry/a salesman/1984→) Gerry has been 1984→.

Now write sentences with for.

10 (Alex/Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years.
11 (Alex/England) Alex has lived in England.
12 (Alice/Switzerland) Alice has lived in.
13 (Carol/a hotel) Carol worked in.
14 (Carol/a restaurant) Carol has worked in.
15 (Gerry/a teacher) Gerry was a teacher.
16 (Gerry/a salesman) Gerry has been a salesman.

92.2 Put in until/since/for.

1 Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married since 1958.
2 I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed a few minutes.
3 We waited for an hour, but they didn’t come.
4 ‘How long have you been here?’ ‘Since half past eight.’
5 ‘How long did you stay at the party last night?’ ‘Since midnight.’
6 John and I are good friends. We have known each other ten years.
7 I’m tired. I’m going to lie down for a few minutes.
8 Don’t open the door of the train when it stops.
9 I’ve lived in this house since I was seven years old.
10 Jack has gone away. He’ll be away until next Wednesday.
11 Next week I’m going to Paris for four days.
12 I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work at 6 o’clock.
13 ‘How long have you known Ann?’ ‘Since we were at school together.’
14 Where have you been? I’ve been waiting for you 20 minutes.
UNIT 93  before  after  during  while

before  during  after

before the film  during the film  after the film

- Before the examination everybody was very nervous.
- I went to sleep during the film.
- We were tired after our visit to the museum.

before  while  after

before we played  while we were playing  after we played

- Don’t forget to close the windows before you go out.
- I went to sleep while I was watching television.
- They went home after they did the shopping.

- We use during + noun (during the film), while + verb (while I was watching):
  - We didn’t speak during the meal.
  - but We didn’t speak while we were eating. (not ‘during we were eating’)

past continuous (I was -ing)  ▶ Units 12–13

- You can say before -ing and after -ing:

before -ing
- I always have breakfast before going to work.
  (= before I go to work)
- Before eating the apple, she washed it very carefully.
  (= before she ate the apple)

after -ing
- I started work after reading the newspaper.
  (= after I read the newspaper)
- After doing the shopping, they went home.
  (= after they did the shopping)
UNIT 93  Exercises

93.1 Complete the sentences. Use **before/during/after** + the best ending from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>before</th>
<th>during</th>
<th>after</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the concert</td>
<td>the examination</td>
<td>hey went to Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the course</td>
<td>lunch</td>
<td>you cross the road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the end</td>
<td>the night</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Everybody was nervous **before** the examination.
2. I usually have lunch at 1.30, and I go back to work.
3. The film was very boring. We left.
4. Ann went to evening classes to learn Spanish. She learnt a lot.
5. My aunt and uncle lived in London.
6. Somebody broke a window. Did you hear anything?
7. A: Are you going home?
   B: No, we're going to a restaurant.
8. Always look both ways.

93.2 Put in **during** or **while**.

1. We didn't speak **while** we were eating.
2. We didn't speak **during** the meal.
3. George telephoned **while** you were out.
4. He wrote a lot of letters **while** she was on holiday.
5. The students looked very bored **during** the lesson.
6. I read the newspaper **while** I was waiting for Jack.
7. I don't eat much **during** the day, but I always have a big meal in the evening.
8. I fell out of bed **while** I was asleep.

93.3 Complete these sentences with **before** -ing ...

1. She washed the apple. Then she ate it.
   **She washed the apple before eating it.** or **Before eating the apple,** she washed it.
2. Think carefully. Then answer the question.
   Think carefully **before**
3. Mary put on her glasses. Then she read the letter.
   **Mary put on her glasses.**
4. The man took off his coat. Then he got into the car.
   Before **his coat.**

Write sentences with **after** -ing ...

5. We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
   **We were very tired after**
6. I ate too much chocolate. I felt sick.
   **I felt**
7. I read the book a second time. I understood it better.

8. John left school. Then he worked in a department store for two years.
UNIT 94  in  at  (places)

■ in

in a room  in a garden  in France
in a shop  in a park  in Rome
in a box  in a town  in the city centre
in the water  in the sea  in my coffee

- 'Where's Tom?'  'In the kitchen./In the garden./In London.'
- Milan is in the north of Italy.
- I like swimming in the sea.
- I live in a town but I want to live in the country.

also

in bed  in hospital/in prison
in a street  in the sky  in the world
in a newspaper/in a magazine/in a book
in a photograph/in a picture
in a car (but on a bus/on a train/on a plane)
in the middle (of ...)

■ at

at the door  at the traffic lights  at the bus-stop

at the top (of the page)
at the bottom

- Why is that woman standing at the door?
- Turn left at the traffic lights.
- There's a man at the bus stop.
- Please write your name at the top of the page.

also

at home/at work/at school  at university
at the station/at the airport  at the end (of the street)
at the hairdresser(s)/at the doctor(s)/at the dentist(s) etc.
at Jane's (house)/at my sister's (house)
at a concert/at a conference/at a party/at a football match etc.

- 'Where's Tom?'  'At work./At home./At the doctor's.'
- Do you want me to meet you at the airport?
- There weren't many people at the party.
- My house is at the end of the street.

■ Often in or at is possible for a building (hotels, restaurants etc.):
- We stayed at a nice hotel.  or  We stayed in a nice hotel.
94.1 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use in or at + one of these:

the airport  bed  a box  the end of  the street  the garden  hospital
a party  the sky

1 He's in the garden................................. 5 The shop is ......................................
2 The shoes are ........................................ 6 The stars are ....................................
3 She's .................................................. 7 She's ..............................................
4 He's ...................................................... 8 They're ...........................................

94.2 Complete the sentences. Use in + one of these:

this book  that field  the kitchen  this photograph  the river  my tea

1 Pat is in the kitchen.................................. She's cooking the dinner.
2 Look at those beautiful horses........................
3 Don't swim ........................................... The water is very dirty.
4 There's too much sugar ................................ I can't drink it.
5 How many pages are there ............................?
6 Who is the man ......................................? Do you know him?

94.3 Write in or at.

1 'Where's Tina?' 'She's at work.'
2 Why didn't the bus-driver stop ................. the bus-stop?
3 Go straight on ................................ the roundabout and turn right ........ the church.
4 There was a big table .............................. the middle of the room.
5 What is the longest river ......................... the world?
6 Were there many people .......................... the concert on Friday?
7 My brother is studying mathematics ........ London University.
8 'Where does your sister live?' '................ Brussels.'
9 Did you read about the accident .................. the newspaper?
10 Will you be ................................ home tomorrow afternoon?
11 Munich is a large city ............................ the south of Germany.
12 'Do you work?' 'No, I'm still ................... school.'
13 George is coming by train. I'm going to meet him ................. the station.
14 Charlie is ................................. hospital. He's going to have an operation tomorrow.
15 There was a list of names on the notice-board. My name was ........... the bottom of the list.
16 I usually do my shopping ...................... the city centre.
UNIT 95  to in at (places)

■ to

go/come/return/walk etc. to ...

- We're going to London next week.
- I want to go to Italy.
- We walked from my house to the city centre.
- What time do you go to bed?

- He is walking to the door.
- I went to the airport by car.
- Tom didn't go to work yesterday.
- I'm going to a party tonight.
- Do you want to go to university?
- You must come to our house.

go/come/walk etc. to home
- I'm tired. I'm going home.
(not 'to home')
- Did you walk home?

■ in/at (► Unit 94)

be/stay/do something etc. in ...

- Piccadilly Circus is in London.
- My brother lives in Italy.
- The best shops are in the city centre.
- I like reading in bed.

be/stay/do something etc. at ...

- He is standing at the door.
- I met Ann at the airport.
- Ann wasn't at work yesterday.
- I met a lot of people at the party.
- My sister is at university.
- Ann is at her sister's house.

be/stay/do something etc. at home
- I'm not going out this evening.
  I'm staying at home.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'At home.'

arrive in ... and arrive at ...

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy/arrive in Paris etc.):
- They arrived in England last week. (not 'arrived to England')

arrive at other places (arrive at the station/arrive at work etc.):
- What time did they arrive at the hotel? (not 'arrive to the hotel')

arrive home (no preposition):
- I was tired when I arrived home.

got to (= arrive) ► Unit 51
95.1 Complete these sentences. Use to + one of these:

the bank  bed  the cinema  a concert  France  hospital  work

1. Joy was ill yesterday, so she didn't go __________ to work.
2. It's late and I'm tired. I think I'll go ____________ today. We haven't got any money.
3. We must go ____________ very often but we watch a lot of films on TV.
4. Are you going out this evening? 'Yes, I'm going _____________. I've never been there before.
5. We don't go _____________.
6. After the accident three people were taken _____________.

95.2 Write to or in.

1. 'Where's Jack?' 'In ... bed.'
2. I'm going ____________ the shop to buy some milk.
3. Tom went ____________ the kitchen to make some coffee.
4. 'Where's Tom?' 'He's ____________ the kitchen making some coffee,'
5. Would you like to go ____________ the theatre this evening?
6. I got a postcard from Sue this morning. She's on holiday ____________ Switzerland.
7. John lives ____________ a small village ____________ the south-west of England.
8. What time do you usually go ____________ bed?
9. Kevin's sister is very ill. She's ____________ hospital.
10. Excuse me, I must go ____________ the toilet.
11. The train left Brussels at 7 o'clock and arrived ____________ Paris at 9.30.
12. I was tired this morning. I stayed ____________ bed until 10 o'clock.
13. Next year we hope to go ____________ Canada to visit some friends.
14. Would you like to live ____________ another country?

95.3 Write to or at if necessary. (Sometimes there is no preposition.)

1. Joy didn't go ____________ work yesterday.
2. Ann is ill. She has gone ____________ the doctor.
3. Are you going ____________ the party on Saturday evening?
4. I talked to some nice people ____________ the party.
5. 'Where were you this morning?' I was ____________ work.'
6. 'Do you usually walk ____________ work?' 'No, I go by bicycle.'
7. We had a good meal ____________ a restaurant and then we went back ____________ the hotel.
8. What time are you going ____________ home?
9. Will you be ____________ home this afternoon?
10. I went ____________ Mary's house but she wasn't ____________ home.
11. There were no taxis, so we walked ____________ home.
12. How often do you go ____________ the dentist?
13. What time do you usually arrive ____________ work in the morning?
14. It was very late when we arrived ____________ home.
15. The boy jumped into the river and swam ____________ the other side.
16. Would you like to study ____________ university?
17. There were 20,000 people ____________ the football match.
18. 'Are your children here?' 'No, they're ____________ school.'
UNIT 96  on under  behind etc. (prepositions)

■ on

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- I met Alice on the bus.
- The office is on the first floor. (not 'in the first floor')
- There are a lot of apples on the tree.
also on a horse/on a bicycle/on a motor-bike

■ under

- The cat is under the table.
- The girl is standing under a tree.
- I'm wearing a jacket under my coat.

■ next to (or beside)/between/in front of/behind

- A is next to B. or A is beside B.
- B is between A and C.
- D is in front of B.
- E is behind B.
also
- A is on the left.
- C is on the right.
- B is in the middle (of the group).

■ opposite

The supermarket is opposite the cinema.

■ above and below

A is above the line.
B is below the line.
The pictures are above the shelves.
The shelves are below the pictures.
UNIT 96  Exercises

96.1 Complete the sentences. Use on + one of these:

the beach  a bicycle  his finger  this plant  the door  the wall

1 The pictures ...on the wall... look very nice.
2 When the weather is nice in summer, I like lying ..................
3 The leaves ...................... are a beautiful colour.
4 Our house is number 45 - the number is ..................
5 He was wearing a silver ring ..................
6 It's difficult to carry a lot of things ..................

96.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (on/under etc.).

1 The cat is ..................... the table.  6 The town hall is ............... the station.
2 There is a tree ...................... the house.  7 The switch is ...................... the window.
3 My flat is ...................... a shop.  8 The cupboard is ...................... the sink.
4 She is standing ...................... the piano.  9 There are some shoes ...................... the bed.
5 His name is ...................... the door.  10 In Britain, we drive ...................... the left.

96.3 Nine people live in a block of flats. Use the picture and complete the sentences with on/
next to/between/above/below.

1 Chris lives ...................... between Catherine and Paul.
2 Joe lives ...................... the ground floor.
3 Mary lives ...................... Steve and Bill.
4 Paul lives ...................... the first floor .............. Chris.
5 Catherine lives ...................... Janet.
6 Chris lives ...................... Sandra and ...................... Mary.

96.4 Where are the people in the big picture?

1 Arthur is standing ...................... on the left.
2 Brian is sitting ......................
3 Alice is sitting ...................... Barry.
4 Arthur is standing ...................... Albert.
5 Brian is sitting ...................... Albert.
6 Albert is standing ...................... Jane.
## UNIT 97  up  over  through etc. (prepositions)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to</th>
<th>from</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jill is going <strong>to</strong> France for a holiday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We walked <strong>from</strong> the hotel <strong>to</strong> the station.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A lot of English words come <strong>from</strong> Latin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>into (in)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I opened the door and walked <strong>into</strong> the room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We jumped off the bridge <strong>into</strong> the water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A man came <strong>out of</strong> the house and got into a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why are you looking <strong>out of</strong> the window?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We usually say **put something in** ... (not **into**):  
- I **put** the money **in** my pocket.  
Compare **put** ... **in** and **take** ... **out of**:  
- I **put** the new batteries **in** the radio.  
- I **took** the old batteries **out of** the radio.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>on</th>
<th>off</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Don't put your feet <strong>on</strong> the table.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please take your feet <strong>off</strong> the table.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm going to hang some pictures <strong>on</strong> the wall.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be careful! Don't fall <strong>off</strong> your bicycle.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>up</th>
<th>down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We walked <strong>up</strong> the hill to the house.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Be careful! Don't fall <strong>down</strong> the stairs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The plane flew <strong>over</strong> the mountains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I jumped <strong>over</strong> the wall into the garden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some people say it is unlucky to walk <strong>under</strong> a ladder.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>through</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A bird flew into the room <strong>through</strong> a window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The old road goes <strong>through</strong> the village.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The new road goes <strong>round</strong> the village.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bus-stop is just <strong>round</strong> the corner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We walked <strong>round</strong> the town and took some photographs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can also use <strong>around</strong> (≈ <strong>round</strong>):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We walked <strong>around</strong> the town.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>round</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>round the town</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>along</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was walking <strong>along</strong> the road with my dog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Let's go for a walk <strong>along</strong> the river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The dog swam <strong>across</strong> the river.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They walked <strong>past</strong> me. They didn't speak.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A: Excuse me, where is the hospital?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B: Go along this road, <strong>past</strong> the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
97.1 Somebody asks you the way to a place and you tell him/her which way to go. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences (Go...).

1 Go past the church.
2 Go the bridge.
3 Go the hill.
4 Go the stairs.
5 Go the street.
6 Go the hotel.
7 Go the station.
8 Go the house.
9 Go the road.
10 Go the bridge.
11 Go the stairs.
12 Go the mountain.

97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (up/over etc.).

1 The dog swam across the river.
2 The book fell a shelf.
3 The plane flew the village.
4 He threw the book the window.
5 They drove the village.
6 A woman got a car.
7 A man walked the shop.
8 The Moon travels the Earth.

97.3 Put in a preposition (up/off/through etc.).

1 We jumped off the bridge into the water.
2 Do you know how to put a film this camera?
3 You can put your coat the back of the chair.
4 She took a key her bag and opened the door.
5 We didn't have a key, so we climbed a window the house.
6 I looked the window and watched the people in the street.
7 We walked the museum and saw a lot of interesting things.
8 In tennis, you have to hit the ball the net.
9 Don't forget to put a stamp the postcard before you post it.
UNIT 98 at by with/without about (prepositions)

■ at

at (the age of) 20/at 90 kilometres an hour/at 100 degrees
- Sarah left school at 16. (or ... at the age of 16.)
- He was driving at 90 kilometres an hour.
  (or He was doing 90 kilometres an hour.)
- Water boils at 100 degrees celsius.

■ by

by = next to/beside (▶ Unit 96):
- Our house is by the sea. (= next to the sea)
- John is standing by the window.

(go) by car/by bus/by plane (or by air)/by bike etc.
- Do you like travelling by train?
- Jane usually goes to work by bike.

but on foot:
- She goes to work on foot. (= She walks to work.)

a book by ... /a painting by ... /a piece of music by ... etc.:
- Have you read any books by George Orwell?
- Who is that painting by? Picasso?

by after the passive (▶ Unit 20):
- I was bitten by a dog.

■ with/without

- Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- Wait for me. Please don’t go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?

do something with something (= use something to do something):
- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
- She can’t read without glasses. (= She needs glasses to read.)

a man with a beard/a woman with glasses/a house with a garden etc.
- Who is that man with the beard?
- I’d like to have a house with a garden.

■ about

talk/speak/think/hear/know about ... etc.
- Some people talk about their work all the time.
- I don’t know much about cars.

a book/a question/a programme about ... etc.
- Did you see the programme about computers on TV last night?
98.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (at/ by etc.).

1 I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
2 He's sitting ............... the telephone.
3 Who is the woman ............... short hair?
4 She's reading a book ............... languages .......... Vera P. Bull.
5 Sara usually goes to work ............... car.
6 They are listening to some music ............... Mozart.
7 Who is the man ............... the sunglasses?
8 They're talking ............... the weather.
9 The plant is ............... the piano.
10 The plane is flying ............... 600 miles an hour.

98.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (at/ by/ with etc.).

1 Some people talk ............... about ......... their work all the time.
2 'How did you get here? ............... bus?' 'No, ............... foot.'
3 In Britain, children normally start school ............... the age of five.
4 It's not easy to live ............... money.
5 In tennis, you hit the ball ............... a racket.
6 Hamlet, Othello and Macbeth are plays ............... William Shakespeare.
7 'Do you know much ............... economics?' 'Yes, I studied it at university.'
8 How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles ............... plane?
9 'Which is your house?' 'The one ............... the red door.'
10 These trains are very fast — they can travel ............... very high speeds.
11 Did Val tell you ............... her new job in a bookshop?
12 A: Have you heard the new record ............... Calvin Swoon?
   B: Yes, it's great. I like his songs very much.
13 My grandmother died ............... the age of 98.
14 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant ............... some friends of mine.
15 The door is locked. You can't get into the room ............... a key.
16 Two men were arrested ............... the police and taken to the police station.
17 Can you give me some information ............... hotels in this town?
18 I like stories ............... happy endings.
19 She doesn't use her car very often — she goes everywhere ............... bicycle.
20 Would you like something to drink ............... your meal?
21 Water freezes ............... 0 degrees celsius.
22 In Britain it's expensive to travel ............... train.
UNIT 99  afraid of  on holiday etc.
(word + preposition)

- These words and prepositions (at/in/of etc.) usually go together:
  
  afraid of ...  
  Are you afraid of dogs?
  
good a .../bad at ...
  Are you good at mathematics?
  She's very bad at writing letters.
  
  interested in ...
  George isn't interested in sport.
  
  different from ...
  Ann is very different from her sister.
  
  sorry about (something)
  Sorry about the noise last night. We had a party.
  
  sorry for (doing something)
  I'm sorry for shouting at you. (or I'm sorry I shouted ...)
  
  married to ...
  She's married to an Italian. (= Her husband is Italian.)
  
  fed up with ...
  I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job - I want to change.)
  
  nice/kind of somebody to do something
  It was very kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.
  
  (be) nice/kind to somebody
  They were very nice to us. They helped us a lot.
  
- on ... Learn these expressions:
  
on holiday
  Jane isn't at work. She's on holiday.
  
on television
  We watched the news on television.
  
on the radio
  We listened to the news on the radio.
  
on the (tele)phone
  I spoke to Jack on the phone last night.
  The house is on fire! Call the fire brigade.
  ‘Was the train late?’ ‘No, it was on time.’
  
- After a preposition, a verb ends in -ing (at doing/of buying/for being etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb (at/to)</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Object(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are you good at</td>
<td>repairing</td>
<td>things?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm fed up with</td>
<td>doing</td>
<td>the same thing every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She went away without</td>
<td>saying</td>
<td>goodbye. (= she didn't say goodbye)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm thinking of</td>
<td>buying</td>
<td>a new car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm sorry for</td>
<td>being</td>
<td>late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
99.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (at/of etc.).

1 He's afraid ........................................ dogs. 5 The car is ........................................ fire
2 She's interested .................................... science. 6 I'm fed up ...................................... the weather.
3 She's married ...................................... a footballer.
4 'Can I help you?' 'Oh, thank you. That's very nice ........................................ you.'

99.2 Put in the right preposition (of/on/with etc.).

1 Sarah isn't interested .......... in .......... sport.
2 'Why don't you like him?' 'Because I'm afraid .......... him.'
3 I like her very much. She's always very kind .......... me.
4 We didn't go to the football match, but we watched it .......... television.
5 He's very good .......... languages. He speaks English, French, Italian and Arabic.
6 'Did you see Tom yesterday?' 'No, but I spoke to him .......... the phone.'
7 I'm sorry .......... your broken window. It was an accident.
8 She's usually late, but I think she'll be .......... time this evening.
9 A lot of people are afraid .......... spiders.
10 Did you have a nice time when you were .......... holiday?
11 It was very kind .......... Judy to lend me the money.
12 'Do you want to watch this programme?' 'No, I'm not interested .......... it.'
13 Life today is very different .......... life 50 years ago.
14 I'm sorry .......... not phoning you last night. I completely forgot.

99.3 Complete the sentences. Use a preposition + the verb in brackets ( ).

1 Are you good ........................................ repairing things? (repair)
2 He's not very good .................................................... names. (remember)
3 We wanted to go to the cinema but John wasn't interested .......... (go)
4 I want some new clothes. I'm fed up ........................................ the same clothes every day. (wear)
5 I'm sorry ........................................ angry with you yesterday. (get)

In these sentences, use without -ing.

6 She went away .......... saying ........................................ goodbye. (say)
7 We ran ten kilometres .................................................... (stop)
8 They walked past me in the street .................................. (speak)
9 Why did you take my camera ........................................ me first? (ask)
UNIT 100  look at ...  listen to ... etc.  
(verb + preposition)

These verbs and prepositions (to/of/at etc.) usually go together:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>listen to ...</td>
<td>- Listen to this music. It's beautiful.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk/speak to somebody (about something)</td>
<td>- Did you talk to Jack about your problem?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- (on the phone) Can I speak to Kay, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write (a letter) to somebody</td>
<td>- I never get letters. Nobody writes to me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but (tele)phone somebody (not phone to ...)</td>
<td>- Can you phone me tomorrow? (not 'phone to me')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belong to ...</td>
<td>- Does this book belong to you? (= Is this your book?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happen to ...</td>
<td>- I put my pen on the table five minutes ago and now it isn't there. What's happened to it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait for ...</td>
<td>- Don't go yet. Wait for me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank somebody for ...</td>
<td>- Thank you very much for your help.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask (somebody) for ... (= ask somebody to give you ...)</td>
<td>- A man stopped me and asked me for money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think about/of ...</td>
<td>- He never thinks about (or of) other people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- I'm thinking of (or about) buying a new car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depend on ...</td>
<td>- A: Do you like eating in restaurants?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- B: Sometimes, yes. It depends on the restaurant.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say it depends what/where/how (etc.) with or without on:

- A: Do you want to come out with us?
- B: It depends on where you're going.

look at ...  
- She's looking at her watch.
- Look at those flowers. They're beautiful.
- Why are you looking at me like that?

look for ... (= try to find)  
- He's lost his key. He's looking for it.
- I'm looking for Ann. Have you seen her?

look after ... (= take care of, keep safe)  
- Mary goes to work every day but she has a young child. When she is at work, a friend of hers looks after her child.
- Don't lose this book. Look after it. (= Keep it safe.)
UNIT 100  Exercises

100.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for etc.).

1 She's looking at her watch.  
2 He's listening to the radio.  
3 They're waiting for a taxi.  
4 Bill is talking to Jane.  
5 They're looking for the picture.  
6 She's looking for Tom.

100.2 Complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for/about etc.) if necessary.

1 Thank you very much for your help.  
2 This is not my bicycle. It belongs to a friend of mine.  
3 (on the telephone) Hello, can I speak to Mr Davis, please?  
4 (on the telephone) Thank you for phoning. Goodbye!  
5 What happened to Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?  
6 Jack's brother is thinking about going to Australia next year.  
7 We asked the waiter for coffee but he brought us tea.  
8 'Do you like going to museums?' 'It depends on the museum.'  
9 Please listen to me. I have something very important to tell you.  
10 We waited for John until 2 o'clock but he didn't come.  
11 'Are you writing a letter?' 'Yes, I'm writing to Julia.'  
12 Don't forget to telephone your mother this evening.  
13 He's alone all day. He never talks to anybody.  
14 'Are you playing tennis this afternoon?' 'It depends on the weather.'  
15 Katherine is thinking about changing her job.  
16 I looked for the newspaper but I didn't read it carefully.  
17 When you are ill, you need somebody to look after you.  
18 Excuse me, I'm looking for Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?  
19 Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after yourself.  
20 When I take the photograph, look at the camera and smile.  
21 Barry is looking for a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

100.3 Complete the sentences. Use it depends ... + one of these:

   what time I leave  where you're going  how much it is  how I feel

1 Do you want to come out with us? It depends where you're going
2 Are you going out this evening? It depends
3 What time will you arrive? It
4 Are you going to buy the book?
### Phrasal Verbs

A **phrasal verb** is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/on etc. 

#### In
- I waited outside the house. I didn't **go in** (= into the house)
- He opened the door and **walked in**.

#### Out
- The car stopped and a woman got **out** (= got out of the car)
- I went to the window and **looked out**.

#### On
- The bus arrived and I **got on**

#### Off
- Be careful! Don't **fall off**

#### Up
- He **stood up** and left the room.
- Prices usually **go up**
- I **looked up** at the stars.

#### Down
- Would you like to **sit down**?
- The picture fell **down**
- Lie **down** on the floor.

#### Away
- The thief ran out of the shop and ran **away**. (or ... **ran off**)
- The woman got into the car and drove **away**. (or ... **drove off**)

**go away** = go to another place:
- Ann has **gone away**. She's coming **back** next week.

#### Back
- After dinner at a restaurant, we went **back** to our hotel.
- Go **away** and don't **come back**!

#### Round
- Somebody shouted, so I **looked round**.
- We went for a long walk. After four miles we turned **round** and went **back**.

#### Over
- The wall wasn't high, so we **climbed over**
- When you come to the end of a page, **turn over**
- I fell **over** because my shoes were too big for me.

#### Fall Over
- **Fall over**
101.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with in/out/up etc.

1 I went to the window and looked out.
2 The door was open, so we went...
3 He heard a plane, so he looked...
4 She got on her bike and rode...
5 I said hello and he turned...
6 The bus stopped and she got...
7 There was a free seat, so I sat...
8 A car stopped and two men got...

101.2 Complete the sentences. Use out/away/back etc.

1 'Why is that picture on the floor?' 'It fell down.'
2 Please don't go! Stay here with me.
3 She heard a noise behind her, so she looked...
4 I'm going now to do some shopping. I'll be at 5 o'clock.
5 I'm tired. I'm going to lie on the sofa.
6 Ann is going on holiday next month. She's going on 5th and coming on 24th.
7 When babies try to walk, they often fall.
8 Jim is from Canada. He lived in Europe for ten years, but last year he went to Canada.

101.3 Complete the sentences. Use one of the verbs in the box + on/up/off etc. (These verbs are all in Appendix 5.)

breaks carried gave got hold + up down
hurry slowed speak takes wash on off

1 Hurry up! We haven't got much time.
2 I was very tired this morning. I very late.
3 This car isn't very good. It a lot.
4 It's difficult to hear you. Can you please?
5 'It's time to go.' a minute. I'm not ready yet.
6 That was a lovely meal. Now we must.
7 The train and finally stopped.
8 I like flying but I'm always nervous when the plane.
9 I told him to stop but he Perhaps he didn't hear me.
10 I tried to find a job but I It was impossible.
UNIT 102  put on your shoes put your shoes on  
(phrasal verbs 2)

Sometimes a phrasal verb (turn off/put on etc.) has an object. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>turn off</td>
<td>the light</td>
<td>put on</td>
<td>your shoes</td>
<td>ring up</td>
<td>my friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>turn the light off</td>
<td>or put your shoes on</td>
<td>or ring my friend up</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can say:  
- turn off the light  
or turn the light off
- put on your shoes  
or put your shoes on
- ring up my friend  
or ring my friend up

but it/them/me/us/you/him/her (pronouns) always go before off/on/up etc.:  
- turn it off  
(not 'turn off it')  
- put them on  
(not 'put on them')  
- ring her up  
(not 'ring up her')

---

**put on/take off**  
- It was cold, so I put my coat on  
(or ... I put on my coat.)
- Here's your coat. Put it on.
- Take off that hat! It looks stupid.
(or Take that hat off!)

**turn on/turn off**  
- It was dark, so I turned on the light.
(or ... I turned the light on.)
- I don't want to watch this programme.
You can turn it off

**pick up/put down**  
- That's my key on the floor. Can you pick it up for me, please?
- She stopped reading and put her book down. (or ... put down her book.)

**bring back/take back/give back/put back**  
- You can take my umbrella but please bring it back.
- I took my new pullover back to the shop. It was too small for me.
- John gave me his keys but I gave them back to him
- I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope.

► Appendix 6 for other phrasal verbs + object
102.1 You can write the same sentence in three different ways. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I turned off the light.</th>
<th>I turned the light off.</th>
<th>I turned it off.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>He put on his shirt.</td>
<td>He</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>She put on her glasses.</td>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Can you, ...............?</td>
<td>Can you turn the TV on?</td>
<td>Can ............?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>She rang up her brother.</td>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>They gave back the money.</td>
<td>We took our shoes off.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>She put down her bags.</td>
<td>I switched the engine on.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>She filled the form in.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>We put out the fire.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

102.2 Complete the sentences. Use one of the objects in the box + on/off/up etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>object</th>
<th>my book</th>
<th>my gloves</th>
<th>my jacket</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>them</th>
<th>+ on/off/back up/down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the tight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the radio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the photograph</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Don't forget to turn the light off before you go to bed.
2. That hat looks stupid! Take it off.
3. I wanted to hear the news, so I turned it on.
4. Thanks for lending me your cassettes. I'll give it to you tomorrow.
5. I was reading when the phone rang. So I put it down and went to answer it.
6. There was some money on the floor, so I picked it up.
7. My hands were cold, so I put my gloves on.
8. It was warm, so I took off my jacket.
9. She borrowed my keys and she hasn't brought it back yet.
10. I picked it up, looked at it, and put it on the table.

The verbs in 11 - 20 are in Appendix 6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>object</th>
<th>your cigarette</th>
<th>a glass</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>them</th>
<th>+ on/out/away/up down</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some shoes</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11. I knocked them and broke it.
12. If you don't understand the word, look it up in a dictionary.
13. I want those magazines. Don't throw them away.
14. He hit me so hard, he knocked me over.
15. Please put it away. You're not allowed to smoke here.
16. That music is very loud. Can you turn it down a little?
17. I tried on a pair in the shop but they were too big.
18. We visited the school. One of the teachers showed us it.
19. I wrote the wrong name on the form, so I crossed it out.
20. 'Do you smoke?' 'No, I gave it up two years ago.'
We use these words (conjunctions) to put two sentences together. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

**sentence A** The car stopped.  
**sentence B** The driver got out.  

**longer sentence** The car stopped **and** the driver got out.

- **and/** or ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence A</th>
<th>and/but/or</th>
<th>sentence B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We stayed at home</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>(we)★ watched television.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My sister is married</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>(she)★ lives in London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He doesn't like her</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>she doesn't like him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I bought a newspaper</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>I didn't read it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's a nice house</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>it hasn't got a garden.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to play tennis</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>are you too tired?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

★ The subjects in sentences A and B are the same. It is not necessary to say 'we' and 'she' after 'and' in sentence B.

- **so ... (the result of something):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence A</th>
<th>so</th>
<th>sentence B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It was too hot,</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>I opened the window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The water wasn't clean,</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>we didn't go swimming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They like films,</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>they often go to the cinema.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **because ... (the reason for something):**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence A</th>
<th>because</th>
<th>sentence B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I opened the window</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>it was too hot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We didn't go swimming</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>the water wasn't clean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She's hungry</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>she didn't have breakfast.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Because + sentence B is also possible at the beginning:**
- **Because the water wasn't clean,** we didn't go swimming.

- You can use more than one conjunction to make a longer sentence:
  - It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.
  - I always enjoy visiting London, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.
UNIT 103  Exercises

103.1 Make longer sentences. Use and / but / or + the sentences in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He didn't see me.</th>
<th>Did you stay at home?</th>
<th>They don't use it very often.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Don't come back!</td>
<td>We watched television.</td>
<td>I can't remember his name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She looked out.</td>
<td>I didn't read it.</td>
<td>She swam to the other side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you want to get a taxi?</td>
<td></td>
<td>They took some photographs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. We stayed at home and watched television.
2. I bought a newspaper but I didn't read it.
3. She went to the window.
4. I saw Jack.
5. The girl jumped into the river.
6. Did you go out last night?
7. They walked round the town.
8. They've got a car.
9. I can remember his face.
10. Go away.
11. Shall we walk to the hotel?

103.2 Make longer sentences. Use so / because + the sentences in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>She was ill.</th>
<th>We didn't play tennis.</th>
<th>It was very hot in the room.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Don't phone me.</td>
<td>We didn't go swimming.</td>
<td>She's friendly and interesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I walked in.</td>
<td>The haven't got a key.</td>
<td>I couldn't sleep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We walked home.</td>
<td>She does the same thing all the time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I opened the window because it was very hot in the room.
2. The water wasn't very clean so we didn't go swimming.
3. The door was open.
4. Ann didn't go to work.
5. I like Carol.
6. It was raining.
7. There were no buses.
8. I got up in the middle of the night.
9. I won't be at home this evening.
10. They can't get into the house.
11. She doesn't like her job.

103.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1. (and) In the evening, I stayed at home and studied.
2. (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3. (and) 
4. (but) 
5. (so) 
6. (because)
UNIT 104  When ...

When I went out, it was raining.
This sentence has two parts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>part A</th>
<th>part B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>when I went out</td>
<td>it was raining</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can begin with part A or part B:

- When I went out, it was raining.
- It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if part A (When ...) is before part B:

- When you're tired, don't drive.
- Don't drive when you're tired.
- Ann was very happy when she passed the examination.
- When Ann passed the examination, she was very happy.

We do the same in sentences with before/while/after (► Unit 93):

- Always look both ways before you cross the road.
- Before you cross the road, always look both ways.
- While I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
- It began to rain while I was waiting for the bus.
- (He never played tennis again after he broke his leg.
- After he broke his leg, he never played tennis again.

When I am .../When I go ... etc. for the future:

I will be in London next week.
When I'm in London, I'm going to visit the British Museum.

The time is future (next week) but we say:
When I'm in London,... (not 'When I will be in London ...')

We use the present (I am/I go etc.) with a future meaning after when:
- When I get home this evening, I'm going to have a shower. (not 'When I will get home')
- I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when I have more time.

We do the same after before/while/after/until:
- Please close the window before you go out. (not 'before you will go')
- Julia is going to live in our house while we are away on holiday. (not 'while we will be')
- I'll wait here until you come back. (until ► Unit 92)
104.1 Write sentences. Use when + a sentence from box A + a sentence from box B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I went out</td>
<td>I switched off the TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm tired</td>
<td>she always stays at the same hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I phoned them</td>
<td>she didn't like him very much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she first met him</td>
<td>there were no rooms free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she goes to London</td>
<td>it was raining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the programme ended</td>
<td>there was no answer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they arrived at the hotel</td>
<td>I like watching TV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When went out, it was raining.

104.2 Complete the sentences. Choose an ending from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>while I was reading</th>
<th>when you heard the news</th>
<th>before I go to sleep</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>when I explained it to her</td>
<td>before you cross the road</td>
<td>while I was out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before he answered the question</td>
<td>after they got married</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Always look both ways before you cross the road.

104.3 Which is right? Choose the correct form.

1. I wait / I'll wait here until you come / you'll come back. (I'll wait and you come are right)
2. I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3. We come / We'll come and see you when we're / we'll be in England again.
4. When I see / I'll see you tomorrow, I show / I'll show you the photographs.
5. Would you like something to drink before you go / you'll go to bed?
6. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
7. She's going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
8. I'm going to New York next month. While I'm / I'll be there, I hope to see lots of old friends.
9. A: Don't forget to give me your address.
   B: Okay, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go.
You want to travel from Paris to Geneva. You are not sure which train you will travel on — the 7.35 or the 10.34.

If you leave at 7.35, you will arrive at 11.08.
If you leave at 10.34, you will arrive at 14.03.

If can be at the beginning of the sentence or in the middle:

If ..., ... (if at the beginning)

If you speak slowly, I can understand you.
If we don’t hurry, we’ll be late.
If you’re hungry, have something to eat.
If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

... if ... (if in the middle)

I can understand you if you speak slowly.
We’ll be late if we don’t hurry.
I’m going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
Do you mind if I smoke? (= Is it okay if I smoke?)

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:
— ‘Are you going to the concert?’ ‘Yes, if I can get a ticket.’

if you see .../if I am ... etc. for the future. For example:
— If you see Ann this evening, can you ask her to phone me?

We say: if you see (not ‘if you will see’), if I am (not ‘if I will be’). Use the present (not ‘will’) after if:
— If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me. (not ‘If I will be late’)
— What shall we do if it rains? (not ‘if it will rain’)
— If I don’t feel well tomorrow, I’ll stay at home.

if and when

if I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I’m not sure:
— A: Are you going out later?
  B: Perhaps. If I go out, I’ll close the window.

when I go out = I’m going out (for sure):
— A: Are you going out later?
  B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I’ll close the window.

— When I get home this evening, I’m going to have a shower.
— If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me. (not ‘When I’m late’)
— We’re going to play tennis if it doesn’t rain. (not ‘when it doesn’t’)

210
UNIT 105  Exercises

105.1 Make sentences beginning with If ... Choose from the boxes.

**if +**
- we don't hurry
- I can get a flight
- you come home late tonight
- I don't feel well tomorrow
- you have any problems

**please come in quietly**
- I'm not going to work
- we'll be late
- I'll try to help you
- I'll fly home on Sunday

1 If we don't hurry, we'll be late.
2 If I can .................................................................
3 If .................................................................
4 .................................................................
5 .................................................................

105.2 Make sentences with If in the middle (... If ...).

**I can understand you**
- It will be nice
- You'll be cold
- What are you going to do
- I'm sure they'll understand

**you don't wear a coat**
- you don't pass your examinations
- you explain the problem to them
- you speak slowly
- you can come to the party

1 I can understand you if you speak slowly.
2 If .................................................................
3 .................................................................
4 .................................................................
5 .................................................................

105.3 Choose the correct form of the verb.

1 If I don't feel / won't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay at home. (don't feel and I'll stay are right)
2 If the weather is / will be nice tomorrow, we can go to the beach.
3 It will be difficult to find a hotel if we arrive / we'll arrive late.
4 The alarm will ring if there is / will be a fire.
5 I'm / I'll be surprised if they get / they'll get married.
6 Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

105.4 Put in If or when.

1 If .... I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.
2 ......... I don't see you tomorrow, I'll phone you.
3 Do you mind ......... I close the window?
4 ......... I get up in the morning, I usually drink a cup of coffee.
5 Have something to eat. .......... you don't eat now, you'll be hungry later.
6 John is still at school. .......... he leaves school, he wants to go to university.
7 Be careful! .......... you aren't careful, you'll fall.
UNIT 106  a person who ... a thing that/which ...
(relative clauses 1)

I met a woman. She can speak six languages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she → who</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I met a woman who can speak six languages.

| 1 sentence |

Jim was wearing a hat. It was too big for him.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2 sentences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it → that or which</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Jim was wearing a hat that was too big for him. 
or
Jim was wearing a hat which was too big for him.

- who ... is for people (not things):

A thief is a person who steals things. (not ‘a person which ...’)
Do you know anybody who can play the piano?
I know somebody who knows you.
The people who work in the office are very friendly.

- that ... is for things (and sometimes people):

An aeroplane is a machine that flies.
Jack lives in a house that is 500 years old.

That is also possible for people (‘Do you know anybody that can play the piano?’), but it is usually better to say who.

- which ... is only for things:

An aeroplane is a machine which flies. (not ‘a machine who ...’)
Jack lives in a house which is 500 years old.

Do not use which for people:
- Do you know the man who was playing the piano at the party? (not ‘the man which ...’)
106.1 Write sentences about the people in box A: A ... is a person who ... Choose an ending from box B to complete your sentence. Use a dictionary if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a thief</th>
<th>a butcher</th>
<th>a dentist</th>
<th>a musician</th>
<th>a fool</th>
<th>a patient</th>
<th>a genius</th>
<th>a photographer</th>
<th>a liar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>takes photographs</td>
<td>sells meat</td>
<td>is ill in hospital</td>
<td>steals things</td>
<td>is very stupid</td>
<td>is very intelligent</td>
<td>plays a musical instrument</td>
<td>doesn't tell the truth</td>
<td>looks after your teeth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A thief is **person who steals things**.
2 A butcher is a person who ...
3 A musician is a person ...
4 A patient is ...
5 ...
6 ...
7 ...
8 ...
9 ...

106.2 Make one sentence from two sentences. Use **who**.

1 A man phoned. He didn't say his name.
   The man **who phoned didn't say his name**.
2 A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.
   The woman ................................................................. a yellow dress.
3 Some people live next door to us. They are very nice.
   The people .................................................................
4 A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.
   The policeman ............................................................
5 A boy broke the window. He ran away.
   The boy .................................................................

106.3 Put in **who/that/which**.

1 I met a woman .......... **who** ............ can speak six languages.
2 What's the name of the man .......... lives next door?
3 What's the name of the river .......... goes through the town?
4 Everybody .......... went to the party enjoyed it very much.
5 Do you know anybody .......... wants to buy a car?
6 Where is the picture .......... was on the wall?
7 She always asks me questions .......... are difficult to answer.
8 I have a friend .......... is very good at repairing cars.
9 A coffee-maker is a machine .......... makes coffee.
10 I don't like people .......... never stop talking.
11 Have you seen the money .......... was on the table?
12 Why does he always wear clothes .......... are too small for him?
UNIT 107

the people we met  the hotel you stayed at

(relative clauses 2)

The man is carrying a box.
It's very heavy.  

The box (that) he is carrying is very heavy.

Ann took some photographs.
Have you seen them?

Have you seen the photographs (that) Ann took?

In these sentences, you do not need 'that'. You do not need that/who/which when it is the object:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>→ the box (that) the man was carrying</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The man</td>
<td>was carrying</td>
<td>a box</td>
<td>the photographs (that) Ann took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>some photographs.</td>
<td>the book (that) you wanted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>the book</td>
<td>the people (who) we met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>some people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Did you find the book (that) you wanted?
- The people (who) we met were very nice.
- Everything (that) I told you was true.

Sometimes there is a preposition (to/in/at etc.) after the verb:

Jill is talking to a man.  → Do you know the man Jill is talking to?
I slept in a bed.  → The bed I slept in was very hard.
You stayed at a hotel.  → What's the name of the hotel you stayed at?

You can also say (a place) where ....
- What's the name of the hotel where we stayed? (= the hotel we stayed at)

Note that we say:
- Do you know the man Jill is talking to him? (not ...talking to him?)
- The film we saw was very good. (not 'The film we saw it ...')

Remember that you need who/that/which when it is the subject (➔ Unit 106):

subject          verb
I met a woman who can speak six languages.
Jim was wearing a hat that was too big for him.
UNIT 107  Exercises

107.1 Make one sentence from two.

1 (Ann took some photographs. Have you seen them?) .................................................. ?
   Have you seen the photographs Ann took.

2 (You lost a key. Did you find it?) Did you find the .................................................. ?

3 (Jill is wearing a jacket. I like it.) I like the ................................................................. ?

4 (I gave you some money. Where is it?) Where is the .................................................. ?

5 (She told us a story. I didn't believe it.) I ................................................................. the ........................................

6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
   How ......................................................................................................................... ?

107.2 Complete the sentences. Use the information in brackets ( ).

1 (we met some people) The people we met ................................................................. were very nice.

2 (I'm wearing shoes) The shoes ........................................................................ not very comfortable.

3 (you're reading a book) What's the name of the ......................................................... ?

4 (I wrote a letter to her) She didn't get the ................................................................. I

5 (you gave me an umbrella) I've lost ........................................................................

6 (they invited some people to dinner)
   The people .............................................................................................................. didn't come.

107.3 Complete the sentences. Use this information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>you went to a party</th>
<th>Linda is dancing with a man</th>
<th>you stayed at a hotel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we looked at a map</td>
<td>you were looking for a book</td>
<td>I was sitting on a chair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they live in a house</td>
<td>you spoke to a woman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 What's the name of the hotel you stayed at ......................................................... ?

2 What's the name of the woman you ........................................................................ ?

3 The house ........................................................................................................ too small for them.

4 Did you enjoy the party ......................................................................................... ?

5 The chair ........................................................................................................ wasn't very comfortable.

6 The map ........................................................................................................ wasn't very clear.

7 Did you find the book ......................................................................................... ?

8 Who is the man ................................................................................................. ?

107.4 Complete the sentences with where ... Use this information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>we had dinner in a restaurant</th>
<th>John works in a factory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>we stayed at a hotel</td>
<td>they live in a village</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 What's the name of the hotel where we stayed ......................................................... ?

2 What's the name of the restaurant ........................................................................ ?

3 Have you ever been to the village ......................................................................... ?

4 The factory ........................................................................................................ is the biggest in the town.
### APPENDIX 5  Phrasal verbs (look out/take off etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (► Unit 101):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Out</th>
<th>look out/watch out = be careful:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Look out! There's a car coming.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>On</th>
<th>come on = be quick/hurry:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Come on! Everybody is waiting for you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold on</td>
<td>Can you hold on a moment, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= can you wait?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry on</td>
<td>Don't stop working. Carry on. (= Continue working.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A: Excuse me, where is the station please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B: Carry on along this road and turn right at the traffic lights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(= Continue along this road)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>also go on/walk on/drive on = continue going etc.:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Don't stop here. Drive on. (= Continue driving.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Off</th>
<th>take off = leave the ground (for planes).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The plane took off 20 minutes late.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Up</th>
<th>wake up = stop sleeping:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I often wake up in the middle of the night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get up</td>
<td>What time do you usually get up in the morning?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow up</td>
<td>What does your son want to do when he grows up?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak up</td>
<td>I can't hear you. Can you speak up a bit?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash up</td>
<td>wash the dishes, plates etc. after a meal:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>After we finished eating, we washed up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurry up</td>
<td>go more quickly:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hurry up! We haven't got much time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give up</td>
<td>stop trying:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I know it's difficult but don't give up. Keep trying.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Down</th>
<th>slow down = go more slowly:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You're driving too fast. Slow down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break down</td>
<td>stop working (for cars/machines etc.):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I'm sorry I'm late. The car broke down.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX 6  Phrasal verbs + object
(ring up my friend/put out a fire etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (► Unit 102):

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>in</strong></td>
<td><strong>fill in</strong> (a form) (= complete a form):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Can you <strong>fill in this form</strong> please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>out</strong></td>
<td><strong>put out</strong> (a fire/a cigarette):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The fireman arrived and quickly <strong>put the fire out</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>cross out</strong> (a mistake/a word etc.):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- If you make a mistake, <strong>cross it out</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>knock out</strong> = make unconscious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- A stone fell on my head and <strong>knocked me out</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on/off</strong></td>
<td><strong>switch on/off</strong> (a light, TV etc.) = turn on/off:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Don't forget to <strong>switch off the light</strong> when you leave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on</strong></td>
<td><strong>try on</strong> (clothes) = put on clothes to see if they fit you:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <em>(in a shop)</em> I like that jacket. I'm going to try it on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>up</strong></td>
<td><strong>ring up</strong> = telephone <em>(also ring - without 'up')</em>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Can you <strong>ring me up</strong> tomorrow? <em>(or ... ring me tomorrow?)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>give up</strong> = stop something that you do:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Tom <strong>gave up smoking</strong> three years ago. <em>(= he stopped smoking)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- I started learning Italian but I <strong>gave it up</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>look up</strong> (a word) <em>(in a dictionary)</em>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I <strong>looked it up</strong> in a dictionary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>turn up</strong> = make louder <em>(TV, radio, music etc.)</em>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Can you <strong>turn the radio up</strong>? I can't hear it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>down</strong></td>
<td><strong>knock down</strong> <em>(a building) = demolish</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- They are going to build a new school and knock down the old one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>turn down</strong> = make more quiet <em>(TV, radio, music etc.)</em>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- The radio is too loud. Can you <strong>turn it down</strong>, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>over</strong></td>
<td><strong>knock over</strong> <em>(a cup/a glass/a person etc.)</em>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Be careful with your cup. Don't <strong>knock it over</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>(also be)</em> <strong>knocked down</strong>/<strong>knocked over</strong> <em>(by a car etc.)</em>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was <strong>knocked over</strong> <em>(or knocked down)</em> by a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>(be)</em> <strong>run over</strong> <em>(by a car etc.)</em>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- A lot of animals are <strong>run over</strong> on busy roads. <em>(These sentences are passive ► Unit 20.)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>round</strong></td>
<td><strong>show</strong> <em>(somebody)</em> <strong>round</strong> = take somebody on a tour of a place:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- We visited a factory last week. The manager showed us round.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>away</strong></td>
<td><strong>throw away</strong> <em>(rubbish etc., things you don't want)</em>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- These apples are bad. <strong>Throw them away</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Don't <strong>throw away that picture</strong>. I want it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>